DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 184 316 **FL 010 992**

TITLE	Chinese-Mandarin: Basic Course. Volume V: Lessons 52-63.
INSTITUTION	Defense Language Inst., Monterey, Calif.
PUB DATE	Jun 65
NOTE	369p.; For related documents, see FL 010 988-992 and FL 011 000-010.
AVAILABLE FROM	Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, Nonresident Division, Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940 ($6.25; accompanying cassettes $9.60)
LANGUAGE	Chinese; English
EDRS PRICE	MF01/PC15 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	Audiolingual Methods; *Grammar; *Ideography; Instructional Materials; *Mandarin Chinese; *Military Science; Pattern Drills (Language); *Reading Instruction; *Second Language Instruction; Second Language Learning; Speech Instruction; Translation; Visual Aids; Writing Instruction
IDENTIFIERS	*Dialogs (Language Learning)

ABSTRACT

This is the fifth of 16 volumes of audiolingual classroom instruction in Mandarin Chinese. The course is designed to train native English speakers to Level 3 Foreign Service Institute proficiency in comprehension and speaking, and to Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Mandarin. The present volume emphasizes the development of facility in reading and writing Chinese characters. Some attention is also paid to the development of oral facility. Instructional materials in the 12 lessons include dialogues, grammar analyses, pictorial aids, translation and question-answering exercises, pattern drills, and reading and writing exercises. The emphasis of the course is on military science. (JB)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

01CM47

CHINESE-MANDARIN

BASIC COURSE

VOLUME V
LESSONS 52-63

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
DLI

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

ED184316

FL010992

JUNE, 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

THIS PUBLICATION IS TO BE USED PRIMARILY IN SUPPORT OF TRAINING MILITARY PERSONNEL AS PART OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE PROGRAM (RESIDENT AND NON-RESIDENT). INQUIRIES CONCERNING THE USE OF THESE MATERIALS, INCLUDING REQUESTS FOR COPIES, SHOULD BE ADDRESSED TO:

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE, FLC
NON-RESIDENT OPERATIONS DIVISION
PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CA. 93940

TOPICS IN THE AREAS OF POLITICS, INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS, MORES, ETC., WHICH MAY BE CONSIDERED AS CONTROVERSIAL FROM SOME POINTS OF VIEW ARE SOMETIMES INCLUDED IN LANGUAGE TRAINING FOR DLIFLC STUDENTS, SINCE MILITARY PERSONNEL MAY FIND THEMSELVES IN POSITIONS WHERE CLEAR UNDERSTANDING OF CONVERSATIONS OR WRITTEN MATERIALS OF THIS NATURE WILL BE ESSENTIAL TO THEIR MISSION. THE PRESENCE OF CONTROVERSIAL STATEMENTS-WHETHER REAL OR APPARENT-IN DLIFLC MATERIALS IS NOT TO BE CONSTRUED AS REPRESENTING THE OPINIONS OF THE WRITERS, OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER, OR OF THE DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE.

CHINESE-MANDARIN

BASIC COURSE

Volume V

Lessons 52 - 63

June 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

Reprinted January 1975
Reprinted April 1978

PREFACE

The Chinese-Mandarin Course, consisting of 180 lessons in 16 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute and approved for publication by the Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese-Mandarin. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LESSONS PAGE

52 - 1

53 - 33

54 - 59

55 - 89

56 - 115

57 - 143

58 - 171

59 - 203

60 - 233

61 - 263

62 - 299

63 - 333

Vocabulary Index - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 361

LESSON 52

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	你們的 bīngsyāng 賣多少錢?	How much does your refrigerator sell for?
	B:	兩百多塊.	Over two hundred dollars.
	A:	要是我現在買, 得給你們多少錢?	If I want to buy one now, how much do I have to pay?
	B:	看 nín 想給多少. 要是都給我們, 一百九十多塊就行了.	That depends on how much you want to pay. If you want to pay in full, a hundred and ninety some dollars will do.
	A:	一百九十幾?	How much over a hundred and ninety?
	B:	一百九十五塊.	A hundred and ninety-five.
	A:	可是我沒有那麼多, 少給一點兒, 行麼?	But I don't have that much. Will a little less be all right?
	B:	可以. 要是 nín 現在給我們一百塊, 以後 nín	Yes, if you give us a hundred dollars now, it will

	每月給我們五塊多. 就行了.	be all right for you to give us around five dollars each month hereafter.
A:	我 lyán 一百塊都給不起, 怎麼辦?	I can't even afford to pay a hundred dollars. What can be done?
B:	也容易辦. Nín 能不能先給五十多塊?	It can also be easily arranged. Can you pay fifty-odd dollars first?
A:	五十多也不容易拿出來.	It isn't easy for me to pay fifty dollars either.
B:	三十多 nín 拿得出來了吧?	You can pay some thirty dollars, can't you?
A:	三十多我也很難拿出來; 我就能拿出來二十多.	It is also very difficult for me to pay thirty-odd dollars. I can only pay some twenty dollars.

	A:	好.Nín 先給我們二十五塊,以後nín 每月給我們十幾塊.	Fine. Pay us twenty-five dollars first, and later you may pay us some ten dollars each month.
	B:	得給你們多少個月?	For how many months do I have to pay you?
	A:	等一等. 我現在不知道. 我得去問問我們的LǏ 先生. 他知道.	Wait a minute. I don't know now. I will have to ask our Mr. LǏ who knows.
2.	A:	你的syāng水從那兒買的? 真好 wén!	Where did you buy this perfume? It is very fragrant.
	B:	謝謝. 我從法國買的.	Thank you. I bought it in France.
	A:	這個syāng水在法國也很難買麼?	Is this perfume very hard to buy even in France?
	B:	不.有錢就行. 買甚麼都很容易買.	No, it isn't. It can be bought if you have the money. Shopping is very easy no matter what you buy.

L. 52

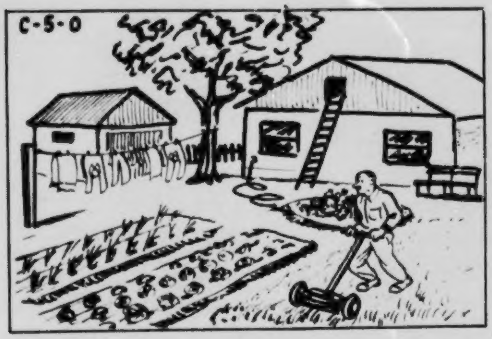
A:	我也想到法國去.带五百塊钱夠用麼?	I want to go to France too. If I bring along five hundred dollars, would it be enough?
B:	我想不夠用.你想,買一件衣shang就得幾十塊钱.	I don't think it would be enough. Just think, buying a dress alone will cost"several tens of dollars."
A:	在法國甚麼時候東西最pyányi?	At what time are things cheapest in France?
B:	現在最pyányi. 你快去吧.	Things are cheapest now. You'd better hurry and go there.
A:	為甚麼現在最pyányi?	Why are things cheapest now?
B:	因為現在到那兒去的人不太多,所以甚麼東西都很pyányi.	Because there aren't too many people going there now, therefore everything is very cheap.
A:	你說我應當快點兒去.	You say that I should hurry and

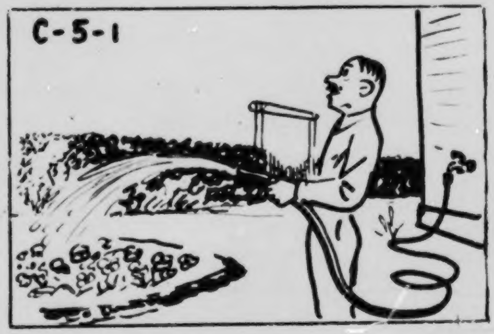
		下禮拜去晚不晚？	go there. Would next week be too late?
	B:	你早去幾天吧．晚去了東西就都賣完了.	You'd better go a few days earlier. If you go there late, things will be sold out.
	A:	早去三天，好麼？	How about three days earlier?
	B:	可以．最好明天就去.	O.K. The best is to go tomorrow.
3.	A:	你在法國的時候，住的lyǔ館多少錢一天？	While you were in France, how much did you pay for the hotel room where you stayed?
	B:	兩塊多，有的三塊多．	Over two dollars. Some charged over three dollars.
	A:	還有貴點兒的麼？	Were there a little more expensive ones?
	B:	還有．要是你住大lyǔ館，也syǔ得用二十多塊	Yes, there were. If you stay at a big hotel, it may

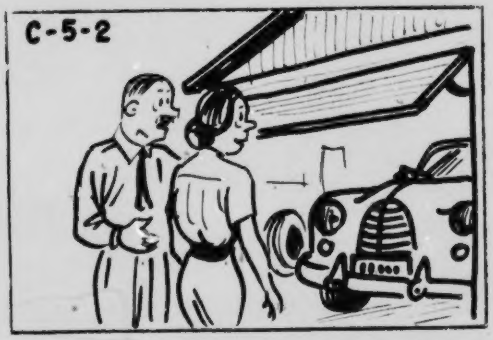
	一天.	cost you more than twenty dollars per day.
A:	法國飯都好吃麼?	Is French food delicious, generally speaking?
B:	不一定.有的好吃,有的不好吃.看你喜歡不喜歡.	Not necessarily. Some is delicious, some isn't. It depends on whether you like it or not.
A:	賣美國飯的飯館兒容易找麼?	Is it easy to find a restaurant serving American food?
B:	容易找.那條街都有美國飯館兒.	It is easy. There are American restaurants almost on every street.
A:	在那兒,人都說法文麼?	Do all the people there speak French?
B:	當rán 都說法文;可是有的也說Yīng文.	Of course, everyone speaks French; however, there are some who speak English.

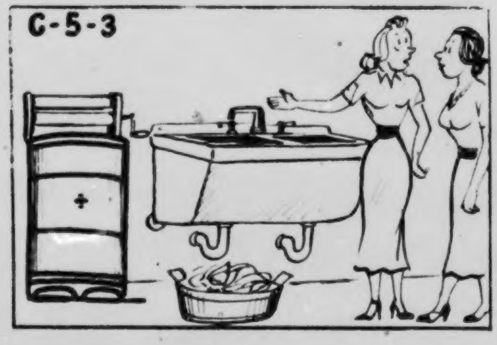
A:	我的法文說的不太好, 他們容易懂麼?	My French isn't too good. Will they be able to understand me easily?
B:	我可不知道. 要是說的不對, 很難懂.	That I really don't know. If you don't speak correctly, it would be very difficult for them to understand you.
A:	我跟他們說Yīng文, 行麼?	Can I talk to them in English?
B:	法國人說的Yīng文也很難懂, 可是有的法國人說Yīng文說的很好.	The English that the French speak is very hard to understand also. But there are some French people who speak English very well.

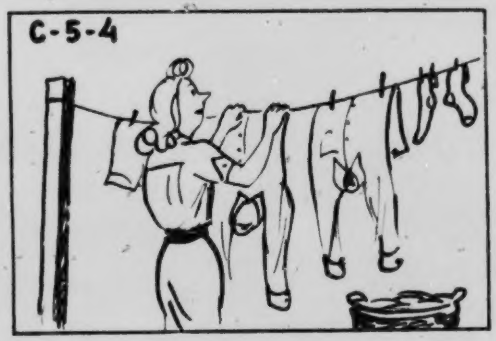
L. 52

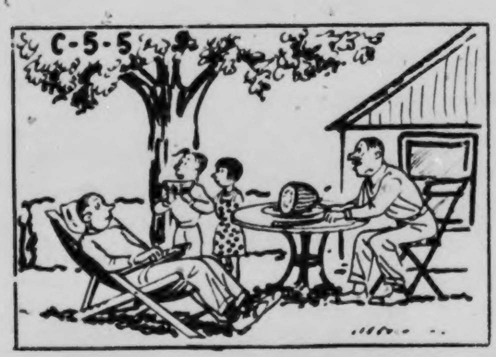

C-5-0

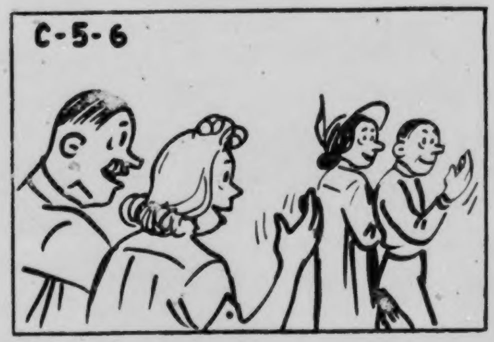

C-5-1


C-5-2


C-5-3


C-5-4


C-5-5


C-5-6

II. Basic Dialogue

Hwáng 先生跟 Hwáng 太太帶着
Lyóu 先生跟 Lyóu 太太到房子
外頭去看看.

1.Lyóu 先生:你們的 tsǎu 地真不小. Nín 有 twēitsǎujī 麽?	Your lawn is very large. Do you have a lawn mower?
Hwáng 先生:我有一個.	Yes, I have one.
Lyóu 先生:大 gài 得多少天 twēi 一次?	How often should you mow the lawn?
Hwáng 先生:Chwūn 天一個多月 twēi 一次; syà 天一個多禮拜 twēi 一次; chyōu 天得兩個多禮拜 twēi 一次. Dūng 天就不用 twēi 了.	In the spring I mow the lawn once every month or so; in the summer once every week or so; and in the autumn about every two weeks. In the winter I don't need to mow the lawn.
Lyóu 先生:Nín 的 hwā 兒是甚麽時候 jùng 的?	When did you plant your flowers?
Hwáng 先生: Chà 不多都是 chwūn 天 jùng 的.	They were nearly all planted in the spring.
Lyóu 先生:真好看. 那個 húng hwā 兒	They are really pretty. Were those red flowers

	也是 chwūn 天 jùng 的 麼?	also planted in the spring?
Hwáng先生:	對了. 有的 syà 天 開, 有的 chyōu 天 開. 可是 得 用 很 多 水.	That's right. Some of the flowers bloom in the summer and others bloom in the autumn. They all take a very large amount of water.
Lyóu先生:	Nín的 hwā 兒 一個多 禮拜 jyāu 一次 水 麼?	Are your flowers watered once every week or so?
Hwáng先生:	不行, 不行. 半天 就 得 jyāu 一次. 有的 時候 一天 jyāu 三次.	No, that won't do. Twice a day and sometimes three times a day.
Lyóu先生:	有的 時候 你 又 jyāu hwā 兒, 又 twēi tsǎu, 一定 很 lèi 吧?	Sometimes you have to both water the flowers and to mow the lawn. You certainly would be very tired, wouldn't you?
Hwáng先生:	對了. 所以 我 跟 我 太太	Right. Therefore I suggested to my wife

說,我 jyāu hwā 兒, twēi tsǎu 的時候,我不作飯,也不syǐ wǎn.	that when I water the flowers and mow the lawn, I will neither cook supper nor wash the dishes.
Lyóu 先生: 好法子. 可是我覺得太太們也應當多作點兒事. 他們也應當 twēitwei tsǎu.	That is a good idea. However, I feel that housewives should do a little more work. They should mow the lawn too.
Hwáng 先生: 我明天跟我太太說.	I will suggest that to my wife tomorrow.
Lyóu 先生: 可是你可別說是我說的!	But you should never mention that it was I who said it!
(Hwáng 先生對 Lyóu 太太說)	(Mr. Hwáng talking to Mrs. Lyóu)
Hwáng先生: 請 nín 看看我們的車房.	Please take a look at our garage.
Lyóu 太太: 你們的車房可以放兩 lyǎng ch車. 這 lyàng	Your garage can hold two cars. This car

是 Yīng 國車吧？	is an English car, isn't it?
Hwáng 先生:對了, Yīng 國車可以少用點兒 chìyóu.	That's right. English cars use less gasoline.
Lyóu 太太:我也喜歡 Yīng 國車. 聽說 Dé 國車用 chìyóu 用的更少.	I like English cars too. I heard that German cars use even less gasoline.
Hwáng 先生:美國車比外國車 shūfu, 可是比外國車用 chìyóu 用的多. Nín 在家裏頭也常常 twēi tsǎu 麼?	American cars are more comfortable than foreign cars, but they use more gasoline than foreign cars. Do you often mow the lawn at home?
Lyóu 太太:甚麼? Twēi tsǎu 當然是男人的事. 在我們家裏都是 Lyóu 先生 twēi. 我去看看 Hwáng 太太去, 好麼?	What? Mowing the lawn is a man's job. At our house it is always Mr.Lyóu who mows the lawn. How about letting me go and see Mrs.Hwáng?

Hwáng 先生:	好. 他在 syǐ 衣shang 的屋子裏頭.	Fine. She is in the laundry room.
Lyóu 太太:	Nín 的 syǐ 衣 jī 是那年的?	Which year's model is your washing machine?
Hwáng 太太:	是最新的. Gāng 買的. 衣shang syǐ 完了,就在外頭shàishai.	It is the newest. We just bought it. We dry our clothes outside after washing.
Lyóu 太太:	太yang 好的時候,半天就可以gān 了吧?	Would the clothes be dry in half a day, if it were sunny?
Hwáng 太太:	對了. 我們一塊兒到外頭 shù dǐ 下去吃西 gwa 吧.	That's right. Let us go outside under the trees to have some watermelon.
Lyóu 太太:	Gāng 喝了可kǒu 可lè, 又去吃西gwa, 我想我吃不下去了.	I don't think I can eat any watermelon right after I have just had some coke.
Hwáng 太太:	Nín看, 他們已經把西gwa chyē了, 我們孩子也在那兒吃呢. 快	Look, they have already cut up the watermelon, and our children are there eating too. Hurry up

去吧!	and go!
Lyóu 太太: 好.	Fine.
(吃了 西gwa Lyóu 先生跟 Lyóu太太 就要走了)	(Mr. and Mrs. Lyóu want to leave after eating watermelon.)
Lyóu 太太: 下禮拜 請 你們 到 我們 那兒 去 玩兒玩兒, 好麼?	How about coming to see us next week?
Hwáng 太太: 好. 你們 有 工夫的 時候, 再來. 再見!	All right. Come again when you are free. Goodbye!
Lyóu 先生: 再見!	Goodbye!

Vocabulary

1.	chēfáng	車房	N:	garage
2.	chìyóu	汽油	N:	gasoline
3.	chwūntyan	春天	N:	spring(season)
4.	chyē	切	V:	cut (with knife)
5.	chyōutyan	秋天	N:	autumn
6.	dūngtyan	冬天	N:	winter
7.	hwār	花兒	N:	flower
8.	jùng	種	V:	plant
9.	jyāu	澆	V:	water, pour over, to sprinkle
10.	shài	晒	V:	dry in the sun
11.	syàtyan	夏天	N:	summer
12.	syīgwa	西瓜	N:	watermelon
13.	syǐyījī	洗衣機	N:	washing machine
14.	tsǎudì	草地	N:	lawn
15.	twēi	推	V:	push
16.	twēitsǎujī	推草機	N:	lawn mower
17.	wàigwo	外國	N:	foreign country

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. Dwō and bàn as numbers:

1.1 Dwō (and more) may refer to a fractional amount or to a whole number depending on its position in relation to the measure.

1.11 Dwō always follows the measure when it refers to a fractional amount, and the number preceding dwō is generally not a round number.

sāngedwo ywè	more than three momths (less than four months)
shŕgedwō lǐbài	more than ten weeks (less than eleven weeks)
èrshrwǔkwàidwō chyán	more than $25 (less than $26)
shŕyīdyǎndwō jūng	after 11 o'clock (before 12 o'clock)

1.12 Dwō always precedes the measure when it refers to a whole number. The number preceding dwō is always a round number.

sānshrdwōge ywè	more than 30 months (less than 40 months)
èrshrdwōge lǐbài	more than 20 weeks (less than 30 weeks)
lyòuchyāndwōkwài chyán	more than six thousand dollars (less than seven thousand dollars)
wǔshrdwōge jūngtóu	more than 50 hours (less than 60 hours)

Compare the following pair:

èrshrdwōkwài chyán	more than $20 (less than $30)
èrshrkwàidwō chyán	more than $20 (less than $21)
wǔbǎidwōkwài chyán	more than $500 (less than $600)
wǔbǎiwǔshrdwōkwài chyán	more than $550 (less than $560)

1.2 Bàn means "half". Whether it is before the measure or after it depends on whether it refers to a fractional number or a mixed number.

1.21 Bàn precedes the measure if it refers to a fractional number.

bànkwài chyán	half a dollar
bànge ywè	half a month
bàntyān	half a day
bànjāng jř	half a sheet of paper

1.22 Bàn follows the measure if it refers to a mixed number.

yíkwàibàn chyán	one and a half dollar
lyǎnggebàn ywè	two and a half months
sāntyānbàn	three and a half days
sz̀jāngbàn jř	four and a half sheets of paper

Translate the following into Chinese:

1) Each month I use more than $20 (less than $21) worth of gasoline.

2) Each week we eat more than $20 (less than $30) worth of food.

3) I bought my camera for more than $50 (less than $51).

4) That bicycle sells for more than $50 (less than $60).

5) The park is ten and a half miles away from my house.

6) I can drive to the park in half an hour.

2.. Stative verbs used before functive verbs:

Stative verbs may be used before functive verbs. The resulting phrases may become stative verb phrases or become functive verb phrases, depending on the meaning of the stative verbs.

2.1 Stative verb phrases:

hǎu	good
hǎuchr̄	delicious
hǎuwén	good to smell
hǎukàn	beautiful
hǎusyě	easy to write
hǎunyàn	easy to read
hǎusywé	easy to learn
hǎudǔng	easy to understand
gòu	enough
gòuchr̄	enough to eat
gòuhē	enough to drink
gòuyùng	enough for the purpose

rúngyi	easy
rúngyisyī	easy to wash
rúngyimǎi	easy to buy
rúngyimài	easy to sell
rúngyidài	easy to carry
rúngyikāi	easy to drive (car), easy to open (window)
rúngyijyāu	easy to teach
nán	difficult
nánwén	bad to smell
nánkàn	ugly
nányùng	hard to use
nánbàn	hard to do

2.2 Functive verb phrases:

kwài	fast
kwài dzǒu	walk quickly
kwài chyù	hurry and go
kwài syě	write fast
màn	slow
mànchr̄	take your time and eat
màn dzǒu	walk slowly
dzǎu	early
dzǎu shwèijyàu	go to bed early
dzǎu shàngbān	go to the office early
dzǎu chyù	go early
wǎn	late
wǎn dàu	arrive late

Translate the following:

1) French cosmetics are good to smell and easy to use but difficult to buy.

2) We must wash our clothes early today so that they can be dried outside.

3) Please boil some water quickly so we can have tea.

4) The bus will be here soon. Let us hurry and go.

5) We don't have enough money to use, so we have to buy less food.

6) Chinese food is not easy to cook but good to eat.

7) I want to introduce you to a young lady, please don't be late.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

A. Dwō (and more) as numbers

(A) Dwō follows the measure referring to a fractional amount:

我們在這個城住了三個多月(不到四個月).	We stayed in this town over three months (but less than four).

Examples:

1) 這個syǐ衣jī用了兩年多(不到三年.	This washing machine has been used for over two years (but less than three).
2) Gūngywán裏的hwā兒jùng了一個多禮拜了.	The plants in the park have been planted over a week already.
3) 我 twēi了一個多鐘頭的tsǎu,一點兒也不lèi.	I have been mowing the lawn for over an hour, and am not the least tired.

Exercise:

Say the following expressions out aloud:

1) yíkèdwō jūng, búdàu bàndyǎn jūng

2) sz̀gedwō lǐbài, búdàu wǔge lǐbai

3) wǔgedwō ywè, búdàu lyǒuge ywè

4) bátswùndwō, búdàu jyǒu tswùn

5) jyóuchrdwō, búdàu shŕchř

6) shŕlidwō lù, búdàu shŕyilǐ

7) lyǎngmaudwō, búdàu sānmáu

(B) Dwō (and more) precedes the measure referring to a whole number:

我一天就用一塊多錢的 chīyóu.那一 lyán jwāng-jyǎbīng 一天用一百多塊錢的 chīyóu.	I only use a little over a dollar's worth of gasoline each day. That company of armored troops uses over a hundred dollars (worth) per day.

Examples:

1) 那位外國太太就作了十個多禮拜的fānyì.可是他先生作了二十多個禮拜的fānyì.	That foreign lady served as an interpreter for only a little more than ten weeks. However, her husband served (as an interpreter) for over twenty weeks.
2) Jyànjù 這個小車房用了四個多月. Jyànjù 這個大車房要用二十多個月.	Building this small garage required a little over four months. Building this large garage would require more than twenty months.
3) 今年 chwūn天買花兒用了五塊多錢.買 twēitsǎujī 用了五十多塊錢.	(We) used a little over five dollars this spring to buy flowers. (But we) spent over fifty dollars to buy a mower.

Exercise:

Say the following expressions aloud:

1) a. shŕkwaidwō chyán, búdàu shryíkwài chyán

   b. èrshŕdwokwai chyán, búdàu sānshrkwai chyán

2) a. shŕgedwō lǐbài, búdàu shŕyige lǐbài

   b. èrshŕdwoge lǐbài, búdàu sānshrge lǐbài

3) a. shŕgedwō ywè, búdàu shŕyige ywè

   b. èrshŕdwōge ywè, búdàu sānshrge ywè

4) a. sz̀bǎi-lyòushr-chíkwaidwō, búdàu sz̀bǎi-lyòushr-bákwài

   b. sz̀bǎi-lyòushrdwōkwài, búdàu sz̀bǎi-chǐshrkwài

5) a. wǔchyān-èrbai-sānshrkwaidwō chyán, búdàu wǔchyān-èrbai-sānshr-yíkwai

   b. wǔchyān-èrbai-sānshrdwōkwai, búdàu wǔchyān-èrbai-sz̀shrkwài

B. Bàn (half) as numbers

(A) 半 follows the measure if used in a mixed number.

那位 fānyìgwān 一個人吃了三個半西 gwa.	That interpreter ate three and a half watermellons all by himself.

Examples:

1) 那位外國小 jye 買花兒, 買了一個半鐘頭.	That foreign young lady spent one and a half hours shopping for flowers.

2) 到了明天,我們的孩子就一歲半了.	By tomorrow our child will be one and a half years old.
3) 這個 twēitsǎujī 用了四年半了,還很好.	This mower has been used for four and a half years already. It is still pretty good.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Yìtyanbàn yígùng yǒu dwōshauge jūngtóu?
2) Yīshang shàile yígebàn jūngtóu gēn shàile jyǒushr fēn jūng yìsz yíyàng ma?
3) Yísweibàn dàde háidz bǐ shŕbáge ywè dàde háidz syǎu ma?
4) Syàtyan nǐ yíge rén chŕdesya chŕbusya yígebàn syīgwa?
5) Yíkwàibàn chyán shr̀ jǐkwài jǐmau chyán?
6) Wǒ yàu mǎi wǔjāngbàn jř. Pùdz kěn bukěn màigei wǒ?

(B) Bàn precedes the measure if used in a fractional number:

這些花兒你 jyāu 了一個半鐘頭的水,我 jyāu 了半個鐘頭的水.	You watered those flowers (plants) for one and a half hours. I watered them for half an hour.

Examples:

1) 半塊錢 gēn 五毛錢一樣.	Half a dollar is the same as fifty cents.
2) 半天的意思也許是十二個鐘頭,也許是很長的時候.	The meaning of bàntyān may be either twelve hours or a long time.

Exercise:

First say the following phrases out loud, then translate them into English:

1) yímáubàn chyán, bànmáuchyán

2) yì Yīngchrbàn, bàn Yīngchř

3) yì Yīngtswunbàn, bàn Yīngtswùn

4) yìlibàn, bànlǐ

5) sānwǎnbàn tāng, bànwǎn tāng

6) yígebàn syīgwa, bànge syīgwa

7) yíkwaibàn chyánde chìyóu, bànkwai chyánde chìyóu

Pattern 2

Stative verbs used before functive verbs

A. Stative verbs before functive verbs become stative verb phrases:

Syà天的衣shang在dūng天不好買.	It is difficult to purchase summer clothing in the winter.

Examples:

1) 這個lóu前頭那塊tsău地太大,不好twēi.	That piece of lawn in front of this building is too big. It is hard to mow.
2) 客人不太多,這個西gwa夠吃了.	There are not too many guests. This watermellon is sufficient for everyone.

3) 那塊 ròu 這麼大, 真不容易 chyē.
That piece of meat is so big that it will be hard to cut up.

4) 這 ke shù 太大, 難 jùng 極了.
This tree is so big that it is difficult to plant.

Exercise:

Fill in the following blanks orally with stative verbs either in a positive or a negative sense:

1) Syàndzài shr chyōutyan, chwūntyande dàyī_______mǎi.

2) Hěn dwō rén shwō: "Chìyóu______wén."

3) Jèige fángdz jyòu yǒu yíge wòfáng, tài syǎu, ______ jù.

4) "Yī, èr, sān" jèi sānge dž dzwèi_________syě.

5) Shāndǐngshangde lù hěn_______dzǒu.

6) Nèijang hwàr lyòushrdwō chř cháng, shŕwǔchrbàn gāu, jēn_______gwà.

B. Stative verbs before functive verbs become functive verb phrases:

孩子們快出去了.
The children are going out soon.

Examples:

1) 快 jyāu 水吧, 那些花兒快 sž 了!
Hurry up and water the flowers. They're about to die (almost dying).

2) 學中文的時候應當少說 Yīng文.	When studying Chinese, speak as little English as possible.
3) 客人吃完了飯對我說:"慢吃."	After the guests had finished eating, they said, "eat slowly."
4) 早回家可以多 syōusyi.	Going home early permits more rest.
5) Bān 長 fá 他,因為他天天晚到.	The class monitor punished him because he is late every day.

Exercise:

Render the following sentences into Chinese orally, using SV-FV functive verb phrases:

1) Close the door quickly. Don't let the cat come in.

2) The interpreter said to me very politely: "Watch your step." (lit.walk slowly)

3) Going to bed early and getting up early is good for you.

4) The Army Commander will visit this position (mil). Don't be late.

5) Read some more books before you trarslate this.

6) My grandmother told her chauffeur: "Don't talk so much!" (lit. talk less)

L.52

Homework

A. Read the following story out aloud several times:

Wǒmen syāngsyá syàtyande tyānchi fēicháng hǎu. Chyōutyan gèng hǎu. Jīnnyan dūngtyan yǒu yíwei wàigwo tàitai bāndau wǒmen pángbyārde yíge fángdz láile. Chwūntyan dàule, Lǐbailyòu tā cháng dzai ywàndz jùnghwār, twēitsǎu, bǎ tsǎudì twēide hǎujíle. Měityan tā dzwò chìchē shàngbān. Tā shwō dzai Měigwo mǎi chìyóu bǐ Ōujou fāngbyan dwōle. Měigwo chìchē yě tèbyé rúngyikāi.

B. Read the following questions out aloud. Answer them orally according to the contents of the above story without referring back to it.

1) Wǒmen syāngsya chyōutyan bǐ syàtyande tyānchi hǎu ma?

2) Wàigwo tàitaide fángdz lí nǐ jyā jìn bujìn?

3) Chwūntyan dàulede shŕhou, wàigwo tàitai Lǐbailyòu cháng dzai ywàndz dzwò shémma?

4) Tā bǎ tsǎudì twēide dzěmmayàng?

5) Měityan tā dzěmma shàngbān?

6) Tā shwō dzài Ōujou mǎi chìyóu bǐ Měigwo fāngbyan ma?

7) Tā shwō Měigwo chìchē rúngyi burúngyikāi?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.287-293)

287.	高	gāu	SV: be high, tall	高syìng	be happy, in high spirits
				眞高	really high or tall
				高 shèpàu	anti-aircraft gun
288.	緊	jǐn	BF: urgent, important	要緊	be important
	紧			不要緊	not important; never mind!
289.	棹	jwō	BF: table, desk	棹子	table, desk
	桌			書棹子	desk
290.	底	dǐ	BF: underneath, below	底下	underneath, below
291.	差	chà	V: differ by: lack, be short	差不多	almost, about
				差一點兒	almost, not as good

L. 52

		[chāi]		差十分十二點	-ten of twelve o'clock
				差一塊錢	- one dollar short
292.	左	dzwǒ	PW: left	左手	- left hand
				左邊兒	- the left side
293.	右	yòu	PW: right	右手	- right hand
				左右都有人	-(there are) people on both the left and the right

B. 句子

1. 這兩個房子，那個高？

2. 左邊兒的比右邊兒的高一點兒.

3. 每個屋子裏頭有一張棹子，你看見了麼？

4. 看見了. 差不多每張棹子上頭都有報.

5. 棹子底下有一個東西，裏頭放着好些寫過字的紙.

6. 說幾句好聽的話，叫他 高 syìng 吧.

7. 不錯. 車房太小，很難把車開進去.

8. 你孩子現在還跟從前一樣常在半夜哭麼？

9. 你認識的那個學生站在那兒等着喝水呢.

10. 你說，十點差五分是白天呢？還是夜裏呢？

11. 這件上衣的樣子太奇怪. Kǔng 怕不容易

賣出去.

12. 你把兩個表放在一塊兒比一比，就知道這個真不壞.

13. 他一離開酒館兒就到張家去了. 在張家 tsău 地上睡了一夜的覺.

14. 上次我學怎麽用高 shèpàu 的時候，我的右手差一點兒打壞了.

15. 美國人喜歡在 syà 天出門. 南方人愛到北方去，北方人愛到南方去.

C. Gù 事

張太太有一件很要緊的事情，得到外國去. 他的兒子，張大有，因為得上學所以不能跟他去.

張大有十五歲了，很高，可是他甚麽事情都不作，都要人 tì 他作. 張太太走以前，給他兒子作了很多吃的東西，够

吃兩個多月的.

張太太找了三張棹子. 一張飯棹在當中, 別的那兩張, 一張在左邊兒, 一張在右邊兒. 這三張棹子上頭底下都有很多吃的東西.

張太太告訴他的兒子:「我走了以後, 你先吃左邊兒這張桌子上的東西. 吃完了再吃飯棹上的. 吃完了再吃右邊兒的. 棹子上頭的都吃完了, 再吃棹子底下的. 張大有說:「這個很容易jì得.」張太太聽了很高syìng的就走了.

過了不到二十天, 張太太就回來了. 到了家一看他兒子, 好syàng病了. 張太太問他:「怎麼了?」張大有說:「我很è, 右邊兒棹子上的東西, 五天以前就吃完了. 別的東西沒有人tì我拿過來. 所以我五天沒有東西吃, 差不多要sž了.」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 186-190)

最 應 當

站 起

B. Radicals

1. 曰 (speak, 73) as in: 最
2. 心 (heart, 61) as in: 應
3. 田 (field, 102) as in: 當
4. 立 (erect, 117) as in: 站
5. 走 (walk, 156) as in: 起

LESSON 53

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	請你來.	Please come over.
	B:	你要甚麼?我可以幫忙麼?	What do you want? Can I help you?
	A:	我要買 hwā 兒.	I want to buy flowers.
	B:	你要買那樣兒的 hwā 兒?	What kind of flowers do you like?
	A:	Swéibyàn 甚麼樣兒的 hwā 兒都可以.	Any kind of flower will do.
	B:	現在是 dūng 天,没有甚麼好的 hwā 兒. 這樣兒的行不行?	As this is the winter season, fine flowers are few. Will this kind do?
	A:	還不錯. 本來你有很多的人幫你的忙, 為甚麼現在就你一個人?	These are rather fine. Originally you had so many people helping you. How come you are alone?
	B:	上禮拜來了三個,這禮拜走了兩個.	Three came last week and two left this week.
	A:	怎麼了?	What was the matter?

L. 53

	B:	病了一個, sž 了一個.	One got sick and one died.
	A:	還有一個呢?	How about the other one?
	B:	送 hwā 兒出去了.	He went out to deliver flowers.
2.	A:	你的朋友已經離開了這兒了麼?	Has your friend left this place?
	B:	走了兩個多月了.	He has left for more than two months.
	A:	來了幾 fēng 信了?	How many letters have come (from him)?
	B:	來了八九 fēng 信了.	About eight or nine letters so far.
	A:	差不多每禮拜一 fēng 吧?	Must be one letter per week?
	B:	對了. 每禮拜來一 fēng 信.	Yes, one comes once every week.
3.	A:	Dí 人的 fēijī 常常來 hūngjà 麼?	Do the enemy airplanes come to bomb very often?
	B:	從前常常來, 現在不常常來了.	Formerly they came often but not now.

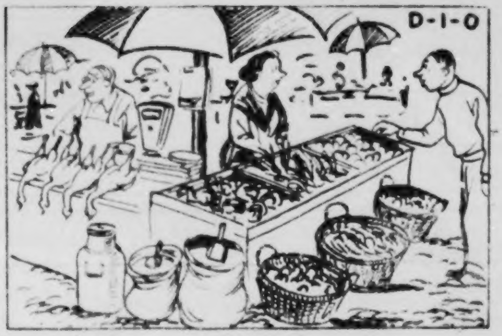
	A:	為甚麼?	Why?
	B:	不是 怕我們的 高shèpàu, 就是 怕 我們的 fēijr̄.	If they are not afraid of our anti-aircraft guns, then they must be afraid of our airplanes.
	A:	怎麼 知道?	How do you know?
	B:	因為 上次 來了 九 jyà fēijr̄, 給 我們 打下來 六 jyà, 就 回去了 三 jyà.	Because last time nine airplanes came, six were brought down and only three returned.
	A:	以後 他們 還 來 麼?	Will they come again?
	B:	要是 再 來; 來 一 jyà 打下來 一 jyà!	If they would come again, everyone would be brought down.
4.	A:	你 為甚麼 晚 到?	Why are you late?
	B:	我 gāng 要 出來的 時候 家裏 來了 兩個 客人.	Just as I was coming out of the house, two guests came.
	A:	他們 tán 了 半天了 吧?	I suppose they talked for a long time.

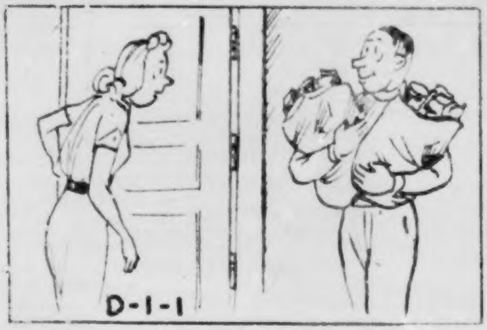
L. 53

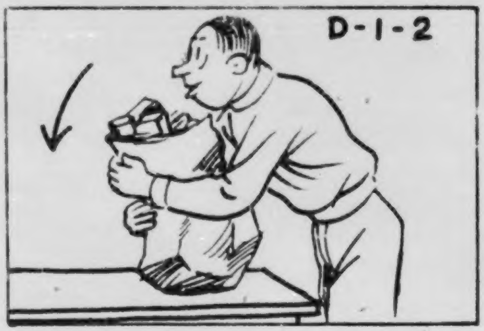
B:	他們坐了一會兒就走了, 可是又來了一個幾年没見的朋友.	They stayed only for a while and left, but then came a friend whom I hadn't seen for many years.
A:	來看你的朋友真多 a!	You have quite a few friends dropping in to visit you!
B:	對了. 走一個來一個!	Yes. They came one after another!
5. A:	我五六年没看見你的大兒子了. 他現在十幾 swèi 了?	I haven't seen your eldest son for five or six years. How old is he now?
B:	十八 swèi 了.	He is eighteen years old.
A:	多高?	How tall is he?
B:	五 chř 六 tswùn 高.	Five feet and six inches tall.
A:	他還 jì 得我麼?	Does he still remember me?
B:	Swéirán 五六年没看見你, 他還 jì 得你.	He still remembers you even though he has not seen you for five or six years.

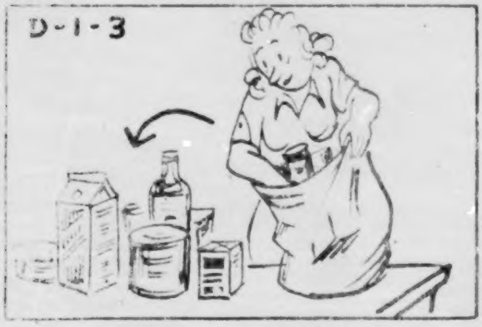
	A:	他還學 gāngchín 麼?	Is he still taking piano lessons?
	B:	已經兩年沒學 gāngchín 了.	He hasn't taken piano lessons for two years already.
6.	A:	你們的 tsǎu 地你天天 twēi 麼?	Do you mow your lawn every day?
	B:	我兩個禮拜 twēi 一次. 要是不 twēi, tsǎu 地很不好看.	No, once every two weeks. The lawn won't look nice if not mowed.
	A:	你天天 jyāu 水麼?	Do you water it every day?
	B:	我兩天 jyāu 一次. 可是我上禮拜忘了 jyāu 了, 所以 tsǎu 都 hwáng 了.	Once every two days. But I forgot to do it last week, consequently the grass has turned yellow.
	A:	今天我看你的 tsǎu 地很不錯.	Your lawn does not look bad to me today.
	B:	因為我前天跟昨天	Because I watered it

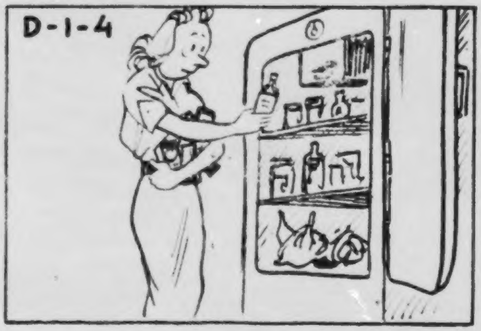
	jyāu 了 兩天,所以 很好.	the last two days, so it is very good.
A:	你們的 hwā 兒 也很 好看.	Your flowers are pretty too.
B:	謝謝. 都是我太太 jùng 的.	Thank you. They were all planted by my wife.
A:	他也天天 jyāu hwā 兒 麼?	Does she water them every day?
B:	他不 jyāu hwā 兒,都是 我 jyāu.	She doesn't water them. I do all the watering.
A:	你幾天 jyāu 一次?	How often do you water them?
B:	要是我不忙,我三天 jyāu 一次.	If I am not busy, I water them once every three days.
A:	要是你忙呢?	What if you are busy?
B:	我也不知道.上禮拜 我太忙,所以 hwā 兒, tsǎu 地都沒 jyāu.	I don't know. I was too busy last week; therefore both the flowers and the lawn were not watered.

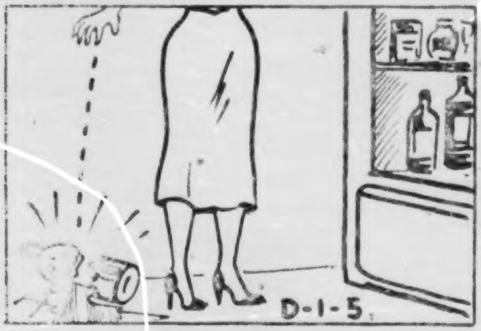

D-1-0

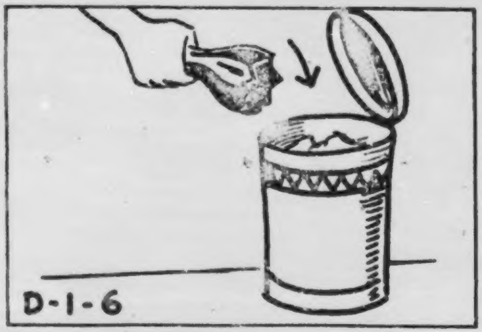

D-1-1


D-1-2


D-1-3


D-1-4


D-1-5


D-1-6

II. Basic Dialogue

有一天 Hwáng 太太叫 Hwáng 美生到街上去買菜，因為他們想在家裏作飯.

美生:	都買甚麼?	What shall I buy?
太太:	最要緊的是買點兒 chīng-菜跟水 gwǒ.	The most essential things are green vegetables and fruit.
美生:	甚麼 chīng菜呢?	What kind of green vegetables?
太太:	買點兒 bwó 菜來. 千萬要新 syan的. 水 gwǒ 也要新syan 的.	Buy some spinach. Make quite sure it is fresh. The fruit has to be fresh too.
美生:	好吧. 我現在就去.	O.K. I am going now.
	(到了 dzáhwòdyàn)	(at a grocery store)
美生:	你們賣 jī 麼?	Do you sell chicken?
賣菜的:	賣. 可是我這兒没有, 在那邊兒有. 我這兒賣 chīng 菜.	Yes, we do. But I don't have them here. They are over there. I sell green vegetables here.
美生:	我太太說, chīng菜要	I want fresh green vegetables. My wife

	新syan的,你們有麼?	said so. Do you have them?
賣菜的:	我們的 chīng菜都很新-syan,都是今天從 syāng下買來的, nín 要甚麼?	All our green vegetables are fresh. They are all bought from the country today. What do you want?
美生:	我要買點兒 bwó 菜跟 húlwóbwo.	I want to buy some spinach and carrots.
賣菜的:	好. Nín 還要甚麼?	O.K. What else do you want?
美生:	Nyóuyóu, yán, 你們都有麼?	Do you have butter and salt?
賣菜的:	有. 可是在那邊兒.	Yes, we do. But they are over there.
美生:	好,我到那邊兒去買.	Fine. I will go there to buy.
	(Hwáng 美生買了東西就回家了.)	(Hwáng Měisheng went home after shopping)
太太:	你回來了. 我要你買的東西你都買了麼?	You are back. Did you buy all the things I asked for?
美生:	我想都買了. 我兩個禮拜	I think I did. I have

	没去買東西,很多東西都貴了.	not done any shopping for two weeks, and lots of things are getting more expensive.
太太:	快進來吧 把東西放在 chú 房裏頭.你買 mǐ 了麼?	Hurry and come in. Put the things in the kitchen. Did you buy rice?
美生:	買了. 也買 yóu 了.	Yes, I did. I also bought oil.
太太:	你先 syōusyisyōusyi. 我把東西放起來.	Take a rest first. I will put the things away.
美生:	我幫着你,好麼?	How about letting me help you?
太太:	你不知道東西應當放在甚麼地方,還是得我自己作.	You don't know where all the things go. I still have to put them away myself.
美生:	Nyóunǎi, 你 yùbei 放在那兒呢?	Where are you going to put the milk?

太太:	等我先都拿出來.有的得放在 bīngsyāng 裏,有的不必.	Wait till I have taken everything out. Some go into the refrigerator, and some don't need to.
美生:	好.那麽我就到客tīng裏頭去 syōusyisyōusyi.	Good. In that case I will go into the sitting room to take a rest.
太太:	你去吧.我現在就把 nyóuyóu, jyú子,都放在 bīngsyāng 裏頭.	Go now. I will put the butter and oranges into the refrigerator.
美生:	你一點兒一點兒的拿到 bīngsyāng 裏頭,别一次拿的太多.	Put a little each time into the refrigerator, and don't carry too much at one time.
太太:	你去吧.	Go now.
	(過了一會兒)	(after a while)
太太:	快來一個人!	Will someone hurry and come!

L. 53

美生:	怎麼了?	What happened?
太太:	Dzāugāu! 一 píng 子 yóu dyàu 在地上了.	What a mess! A bottle of oil dropped on the floor.
美生:	píng子 swèi 了 麼?	Is the bottle broken?
太太:	Swèi 了. 你快來把 píng 子 rēng 到 lāsyitǔng 裏頭去.	Yes, it is broken. Come quickly. Throw the bottle into the garbage can.
美生:	好吧. 我就去 rēng.	O.K. I will go and throw it there.

Vocabulary

18.	bwōtsài	菠菜	N:	spinach
19.	chīngtsài	青菜	N:	green vegetables
20.	dyàu	掉	V:	drop (by accident)
21.	dzáhwòdyàn	雜貨店	N:	grocery store
22.	dzāugāu	糟糕	IE/SV:	what a mess!/too bad
23.	húlwóbwo	胡蘿蔔	N:	carrot
24.	jyúdz	橘子	N:	orange
25.	lāsyitǔng	垃圾桶	N:	garbage can
26.	mǐ	米	N:	grain, uncooked rice
27.	Nèmma	那麼	IE:	in that case
28.	nyóuyóu	牛油	N:	butter
29.	píngdz	瓶子	N:	bottle
29.1	-píng(dz)	瓶(子)	M:	a bottle of
30.	shŕwù	食物	N:	food
31.	shwěigwǒ	水果	N:	fruits
32.	swèi	碎	SV:	be broken (into pieces)
33.	syīnsyan	新鮮	SV:	be fresh
34.	yán	鹽	N:	salt
35.	yóu	油	N:	oil, sauce

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. Unusual Relationship of S-V-O

Spoken Chinese and English have certain common patterns, among them the basic structural order: Actor - Action - Receiver, better known to language students as Subject - Verb - Object (S-V-O). "I hit him" in English becomes "Wǒ dǎ tā" in Chinese. But the normal relationship of Actor - Action - Receiver does not hold in every case. Some of the seemingly V-O combinations do not express the relation of Action - Receiver. Lái and chyù are among this group:

Lái yíge rén!	Will somebody please come!
Lái rén le.	Someone has come.
Chyùle sānge sywésheng.	Three students went.
Chyùle lyǎngjyà fēijī.	Two planes went.

The "objects" in position are really subjects in meaning in all the above illustrations.

Translate the following:

1) He invited more than twenty persons for dinner last Saturday. Only eight persons came.

2) As soon as I arrived there, I sent him a letter.

3) He has been gone three months already, but there has been no word from him.

4) Ten planes came to New York this morning.

5) I would like to go with you, but some guests just came.

2. Time-Spent Expressions (continued)

It has been mentioned in Lesson 49 that the time-spent expression generally follows the main verb. However, it may precede the verb in negative sentences. When the action associated with the time expression is negative, indicating that for a certain length of time something didn't happen, the time-spent expression may precede the verb:

Tā sāntyan méichr̄fàn, swóyi bìngle.	He didn't eat for three days, so he got sick.
Rén yàushr sāntyan bùchr̄fàn, yídìng jyòu bìngle.	If people don't eat for three days, they certainly will get sick.

Certain NU-M time expressions preceding the verb in a sentence may look like a time-spent expression. But actually, they are time-when expressions with specifiers like jèi, nèi and mĕi. Here are some of the common forms:

"Wŏ sz̀tyan dōu dzài jèr" means "Wŏ jèi sz̀tyan dōu dzài jèr"
I'll be here all these four days

"Tā yíge ywè yùng èr-băikwai chyán" means "Tā mĕi yíge ywè yùng èr-băikwai chyán"
He spends two hundred dollars every month

"Wŏ wŭtyan chyù yìtsz̀" means "Wŏ mĕi wŭtyan chyù yìtsz̀"
I go there once every five days

Translate the following:

1) I haven't seen him for almost a month.

2) I don't think you can finish that work in one year.

3) He can read one book a day.

4) I want him not to smoke for a week.

5) It's very strange about his illness. He feels fine one day and not so well the next day.

6) I give him three hundred dollars every month.

7) He lives in England one year and in France the next.

8) I don't think three months will be enough.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Unúsual relationship of "Subject-Verb-Object"

這個城來了一lyán jwāngjyǎbùdwèi.	A company of armored troops came to this city.

(PW) Verb Subject

Examples:

1) 去年 chyōu 天去過一 fēng 信.	Last autumn a letter was sent (there).
2) 那個 dzáhwòdyàn 到了很多 jyú 子.	A lot of oranges had just arrived at that grocery.
3) 上次 Shr̀jyè大 jàn sž 了多少萬人?	How many thousands of people died during the last great war?
4) 明年 dūng天要走三十多個學生.	Over 30 students will leave next winter.
5) Dēnglù以前去了五 jyà fēijī 給他們 hùháng.	Prior to the landing five planes went to convoy them.
6) 要是能來幾 tǐng jùngjī-chyāng 那麼就能把 dí 人打 bài 了.	If a few heavy machine guns could be had, we would beat the enemy.

Exercise:

a. Rearrange the following sentences using verb-subject word order and say them out loud:

Dzwótyan jūngwǔ jǐshrge Lùjyūnfùnyǔdwèide $\underset{\text{(Subj)}}{\underline{\text{bīng}}}$ dàu jèr $\underset{\text{(Verb)}}{\underline{\text{láile}}}$.

Ex: Dzwótyan jūngwǔ jèr $\underset{\text{(Verb)}}{\underline{\text{láile}}}$ jǐshrge Lùjyūnfùnyǔdwèide $\underset{\text{(Subj)}}{\underline{\text{bīng}}}$.

1) Chyùnyan lyǎngwei Ōujou syānsheng sz̆le.

2) Jīntyan jūngwǔ sānwei fānyigwān yàu dzǒu.

3) Chyántyan syàwǔ sāndyǎn jūng yíwei hěn yǒumíngde kèren láile.

4) Shàngge ywè wǔjyà dírende hūngjàjī dàu wǒmende fēijīchǎng láigwo.

5) Hěn dwō dzwèi syīnde syǐyījī, twēitsǎujī dàule.

6) Nín jyàude nèi wǔlyàng chūdzūchìchē sānlyǎng yǐjing láile.

7) Míngtyan hěn dwō lyǎngchībùdwèi yàu dzài hǎibyar dēnglù.

8) Jànshr̀ dǎde hěn lìhai, èrshrjyà hūngjàjī dàu nèr chyùle.

b. Render the following sentences into Chinese orally:

1) Three military policemen came to the grocery store yesterday.

2) Four or five interpreters left last month.

3) A truck ran into that building, and more than ten people were killed.

4) They hoped that seven policemen could participate, but only two went.

5) Here come the guests. Please bring some fresh fruit.

6) Probably two of the enemy's bombers came last night.

7) Send us a letter after you arrive. Don't forget!

8) Col. LǏ invited ten interpreters for the tea party. Only half of them came.

Pattern 2

Further usage in the "Time-Spent" pattern:

Dzāugāu! 我們好幾個禮拜沒吃 chīng 菜了.	Heck! We haven't had green vegetables for quite a few weeks already.

Examples:

1) Dzǔ母半天沒說話, hūrán 哭起來了. Syà了我一tyàu.	Grandmother didn't talk for quite a while. All of a sudden she started crying. I was scared!
2) 差不多四年半沒玩兒 gāngchín了. 他大 gài 忘了.	It's been almost four and a half years since he fooled around with a piano. He's probably forgotten (everything).
3) 我們一個月不吃 mǐ, 就吃 myànbāu 怎麼樣?	How about not eating rice for a whole month and eating only bread?
4) 人多少時候不吃 yán, 不吃 yóu 就有病了?	How long do people have to go without salt and fat before they become ill?

5) 母親好幾個禮拜沒到那個 dzáhwòdyàn 買菜了,因為那兒的 bwó 菜, húlwóbwo 跟別的 chīng 菜都不新 syan.	Mother hadn't been to that grocery to shop for quite a few weeks because the spinach, carrots, and other vegetables there are not fresh.
6) 他幾天沒睡覺.現在睡着了. Lyán 那個大 píng 子 dyàu 下來 swèi 了也沒聽見.	He has not slept for several days. He is now fast asleep. Even when the bottle fell, he didn't hear it break into pieces.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Yàushr wǒmen yìnyán bugwāhúdz, nèmma húdz yǒu dwō cháng?

2) Nǐ syǎng wǒmende tàitai kěn bukěn sāntyan bùjyǎnghwà?

3) Yàushr rén yìnyán méikànjyan tàiyang, nèmma tā yídìng hěn hēi háishr hěn bái?

4) Yàushr yíge sžjī shŕdwonyán méikāichē, tā hái néng kāide nèmma hǎu ma?

5) Yìnyán bùchr̄ shémma shŕwu néng ràng rén sž ma?

6) Yàushr yíge ywè hái méiyou rén lái bǎ lāsyītǔnglide lāsyī bāndzǒu, nèmma nǐ dzěmma bàn?

7) Yíge rén bànnyán bùchr̄ yóu hwòshr nyóuyóu, jyòu yǒubìngle ma?

8) Yàushr nǐ sānsz̀nyán méichr̄ jyúdz hwòshr byéde shwěigwǒ, nèmma nǐ jywéde dzěmmayàng?

9) Ài chōuyānde rén sānsz̀tyān bùchōuyān jyòu jywéde dzěmma le?

10) Yàushr nǐ lyǎngge ywè búshàngkè, nǐde Jūngwén jwēideshang jwēibushang tāmen?

Homework

A. Read the following story out aloud several times:

Wǒmende bùdwèili yǒu yíwei tsúng Ōujou láide fānyìgwān. Tā fēicháng chígwài, yěsyǔ wǒmen kéyi shwō tā hěn yǒuyìsz. Tā lyǎngsāntyān bùchr̄fàn yě bùjywéde è. Yǒude shŕhou tā yì-tyan jyòu hē yìpíng jyǒu, shémma dōu bùchr̄. Tā syǐhwan wén hwàilede shwěigwǒ gēn chīngtsài. Tā bǎ dz̀syíngchē fàngdzai tsèswóli, bǎ dyǎnsyin fàngdzai wòfángli. Dūngtyan yàushr láile kèren, tā buchǐng kèren dàu kètīng chyù dzwò. Tā chǐng kèren dàu ywàndz chyù sànbù.

B. According to the contents of the above story, complete the following sentences orally without referring to the text:

1) Wǒmen bùdwèilide fānyìgwān shr tsúng__________.

2) Tā lyǎngsāntyān bùchr̄fàn yě __________.

3) Yǒude shŕhou tā yìtyān jyòu hē__________.

4) Tā syǐhwan wén ______________.

5) Tā bǎ dz̀syíngchē fàngdzai_____ _______.

6) Tā bǎ dyǎnsyin fàngdzai ___________.

7) Dūngtyan yàushr láile kèren, tā chǐng kèren_______.

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.294-300)

294.	洗	syǐ	V: wash	洗一洗	- wash
				洗不gānjing	- cannot be washed clean
				洗衣shang	- wash clothes
				洗dzǎu	- take a bath
				洗臉	- wash the face
295.	臉	lyǎn	N: face	臉上	- on the face
				臉pén	- wash basin
				dyōu 臉	- disgraceful, lose face
296.	然	rán	BF: 當然	當然	- of course, naturally
				要不然	- if not, then: otherwise, or else
				hū 然	- suddenly
				swéi 然	- although

L. 53

297.	直 直	jŕ	BF: straight on	一直 一直走	straight on go straight on
298.	刻	kè	M: quarter hour	三點三刻 一刻鐘 lì 刻	3:45 15 minutes immediately
299.	便	byàn	BF: convenient	方便 swéi 便	convenient do as one pleases(lit. follow convenience)
		pyán	BF: cheap	便 yi	cheap
300.	第 苐	dì	P:(ordinalizing prefix to numbers)	第一 第四天 第幾？	first the fourth day which? (of series)

B. 句子

1. 你天天甚麼時候洗臉？
2. 早上起來以後，lì 刻洗臉.
3. 幾點鐘起來？
4. 六點三刻.
5. 明天早上我到你家去看看，可以麼？
6. Swéi 便甚麼時候來都可以.
7. 這是我第一次到你家去，請告訴我怎
   麼走.
8. 從這兒一直往東走，第五個房子就是
   我們家.
9. 那個菜鋪的 chīng 菜，水 gwǒ, 又便 yi
   又新 syan
10. 小孩子當然應當聽父親母親的話.
11. 上禮拜走了十幾個學生.
12. 洗 dzǎu 房裏的臉 pén 壞了，真不方便.
13. 先生問他，他不懂，hū 然哭了，真 dyōu
    臉，

14. 奇怪，他愛在棹子底下睡覺. Kŭng 怕他有病吧?

15. 不認識他不要緊，跟他說兩句客氣話，他就 kěn 幫忙.

16. Swéi 然已經是 syà 天了，可是西 gwa 還不能吃呢.

17. 在中國一個禮拜的第幾天叫禮拜天?

18. 我四年沒到日本去了，聽說很多地方跟從前不一樣了.

19. 王老五問 jǐngchá :「你說開車的時候，人人都應當走右邊兒，那麼誰走左邊兒呢?」

C. Gù 事

王國方不太 tsūng 明，所以他不常出去買東西. 他們家裏頭用的東西差不多都是他太太去買.

L. 53

他們要有小孩兒了，所以王太太上街買東西，很不方便. 當然這時候就得叫國方去買.

王太太叫國方去買一點兒洗臉用的毛jīn，yí子. 因為大鋪子裏頭的東西，又便yí又好，所以告訴國方到大鋪子去買.

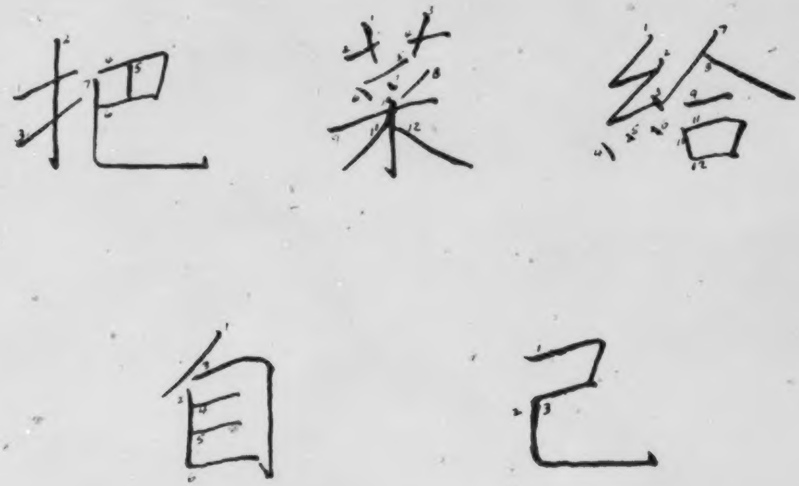
國方拿了錢，lì刻就去買. 出了門一直往東走，過了三條街，就在一個大鋪子裏買了一條最大的毛jīn.

他回來以後，王太太看見他買了一個五chǐ多長的毛jīn，很生氣. 問他:「我叫你買的是洗臉用的毛jīn，為甚麼你買這麼大的毛jīn?」

國方說:「你叫我到大鋪子去買，在大鋪子當然買大毛jīn. 不對麼?」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 191-195)



B. Radicals

1. 扌 (hand, 64) as in: 把
2. 艹 (grass, 140) as in: 菜
3. 糸 (silk, 120) as in: 給
4. 自 (self, from, 132) as the word: 自
5. 己 (self, 49) as the word: 己

LESSON 54

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	你喜歡吃 bwó 菜麼?	Do you like to eat spinach?
	B:	不太喜歡.	I don't like it too much.
	A:	你應當多吃 bwó 菜.	You should eat more spinach.
	B:	Bwó 菜好 dàu 是好, 可是不好吃.	It is good all right, but not tasty.
	A:	你喜歡吃 húlwóbwo 麼?	Do you like to eat carrots?
	B:	也不太喜歡.	I don't like them too much either.
	A:	你也應當多吃 húlwóbwo	You should also eat more carrots.
	B:	Húlwóbwo 好 dàu 是好, 可是不太好吃.	They are good all right, but not very tasty.
	A:	你喜歡吃別的新 syan chīng 菜麼?	Do you like to eat other fresh vegetables?
	B:	喜歡 dàu 是喜歡, 不過都很貴.	I like them all right, but they are all very expensive.

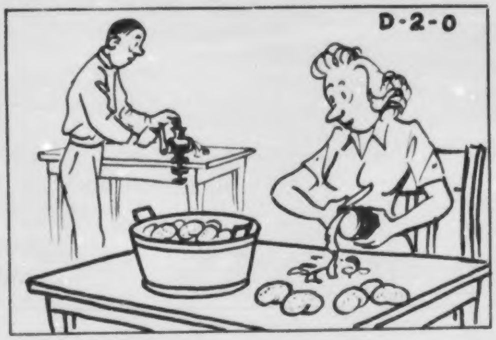
2.	A:	今天我没有錢了.	I don't have any money today.
	B:	我知道你昨天還有五十塊錢呢.	I know that yesterday you still had fifty dollars.
	A:	昨天有 dàu 是有,不過今天都用完了.	It is true that I had the money yesterday, but it's been used up today.
	B:	今天早上你還有三十塊呢.	You still had thirty dollars this morning.
	A:	今天早上有 dàu是有,可是今天中wǔ 我太太把我的錢都拿走了.	It is true I had it this morning, but by noon today my wife took all my money away.
	B:	他買甚麼了?	What did she buy?
	A:	他買了 syāng水兒跟別的 hwàjwāngpǐn 了.	She bought perfume and other cosmetics.
3.	A:	今天我必得到 dzáhwò-dyàn去.	I have to go to the grocery today.
	B:	爲甚麼?	Why?
	A:	我們家裏頭一點兒	We don't have any vegetables in

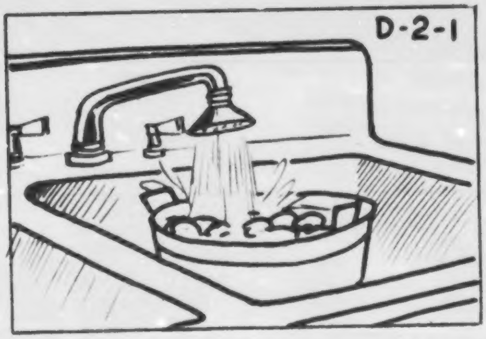
	chīng 菜都沒有了.	our house.
B:	你們必得吃 chīng 菜麼?	Do you have to eat vegetables?
A:	對了. 我們天天必得吃 chīng菜.	Right. We have to have vegetables every day.
B:	你還買別的麼?	Are you going to buy other things?
A:	我還必得買點兒水 gwǒ.	I also have to buy some fruits.
B:	甚麼水 gwǒ?	What kinds of fruits?
A:	Jyú 子, pīnggwo 都必得買點兒.	Some oranges and apples have to be bought.
B:	Dzáhwòdyàn 的 chīng菜跟水gwǒ 都便 yi 麼?	Are vegetables and fruitscheap at the groceries?
A:	又便 yi 又新 syan.	They are cheap and fresh.
B:	要是你就買chīng 菜跟水 gwǒ, 你別去了. 我們有很多. 你可以吃我們的.	You don't need to go if you are only buying vegetables and fruits. We have a great deal and you can eat ours.

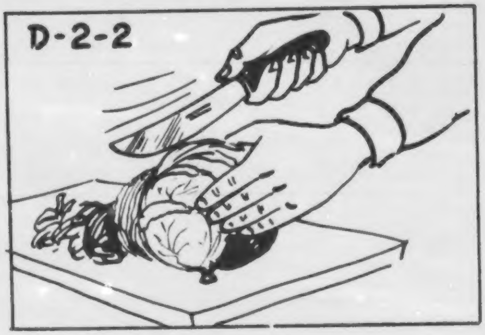
	A:	不行. 我必得去,因爲我還要買myànbāu跟nyóuyóu呢.	That won't do. I have to go because I still have to buy bread and butter.
	B:	你們都沒有了麼?	Did you use them all up?
	A:	對了. 今天早上都給吃了.	Right. We ate them all this morning.
	B:	你也不必去了,因爲我們也有很多myànbāu跟nyóuyóu.	You still don't have to go because we also have a lot of bread and butter.
	A:	我必得去,因爲我們的yán跟táng都沒有了.	I have to go because we have used up the salt and sugar.
	B:	那你就去吧!	Go, if that is the case!
4.	A:	我今天看見了很多很便yi的東西.	I saw many very reasonable things today.
	B:	你在甚麼地方看見的?	Where did you see them?
	A:	在鋪子的chwānghu裏看見的.	I saw them in some shop-window.

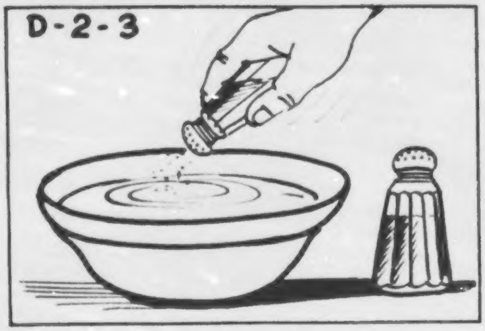
B:	你千萬別到那兒去買.	Don't ever go shopping there
A:	為甚麼?	Why not?
B:	因為便yi的東西沒有好的.	Because cheap things are never good.
A:	那些作買賣的都說他們的東西又便yi又好.	Those merchants all claim that their things are both cheap and good.
B:	你千萬別聽他們的話. 他們說的話不一定都是真話.	Don't ever listen to their talk. What they claim may not necessarily be true.

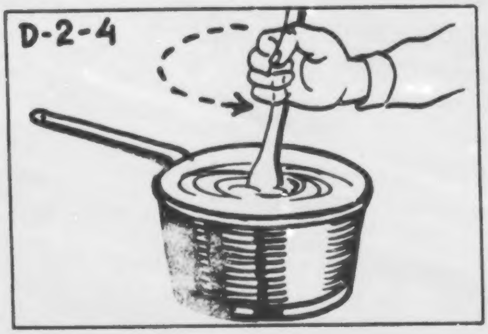
L. 54

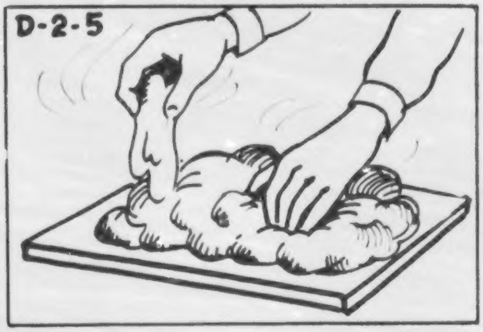

D-2-0

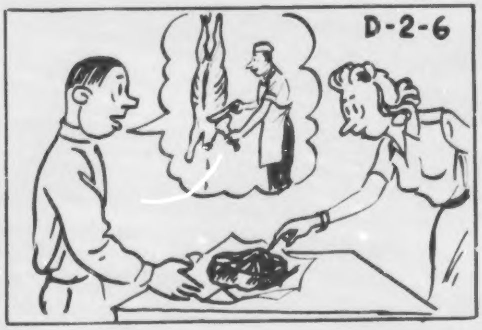

D-2-1


D-2-2

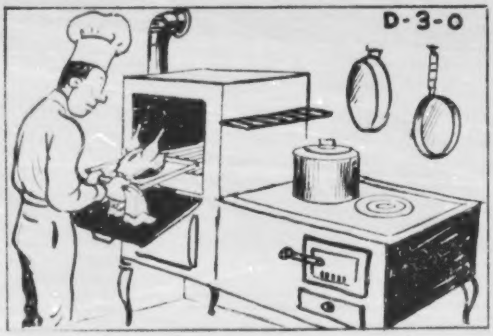

D-2-3

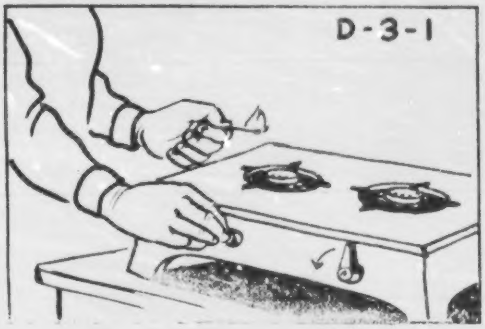

D-2-4

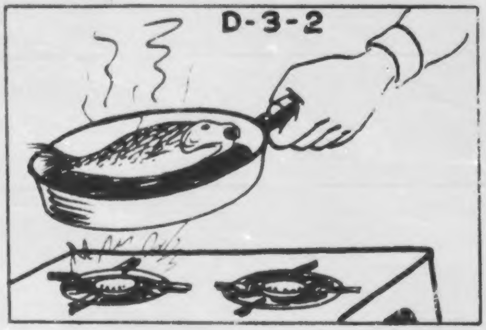

D-2-5

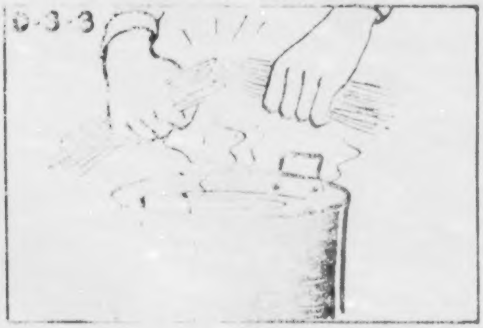

D-2-6

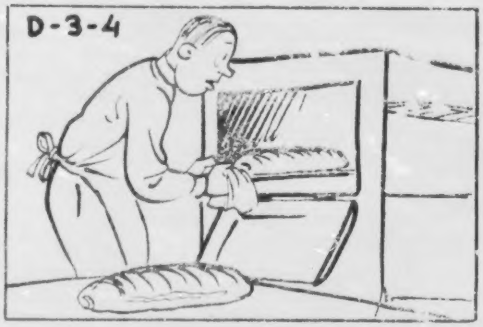
L. 54

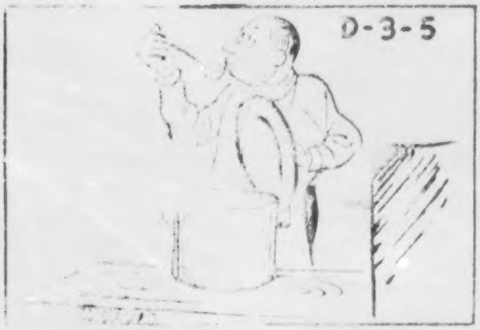


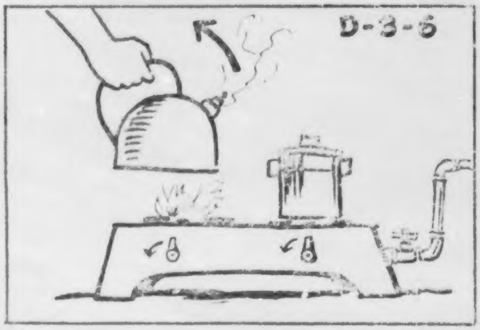












II. Basic Dialogue

Hwáng美生跟他太太兩個人在家裏作飯.

太太:	你chyē ròu我syāu mălíngshŭ,好不好?	You cut the meat, and I will peel the potatoes, how about it?
先生:	你千萬別把手syāu了.	Don't ever cut your hands.
太太:	等一會兒你洗mălíngshŭ,我chyē白菜.	In a while you can wash the potatoes, and I will cut the cabbages.
先生:	我們的tāng好dàu是好,可是我覺得少了點兒hújyāumàn兒. Yán也不夠.	Our soup is good all right, but I think it lacks a little ground pepper. There is not enough salt either.
太太:	你可以再放點兒hújyāumàn兒跟yán,可是千萬別放的太多,把tāng nùng壞了.	You may put in a little more ground pepper and salt, but don't **ever put** in too much and spoil the soup.

先生: 我放好了的時候請你 chángchang, 要是不夠 你再放, 好不好?	After I have put some in, please taste it and see if more should be added, will you?
太太: 你現在去 róu myàn, 等一會兒你好 kǎu myànbāu. 你 kǎu 的 myànbāu 最好吃.	Now will you knead the dough, so that after a while you can bake the bread. The bread you bake is most delicious.
先生: 誰 kǎu jī 呢?	Who will roast the chicken?
太太: 也是你 kǎu. 你 jì 的 上次你 kǎu 的 jī, Lyóu 先生跟 Lyóu 太太都喜歡吃.	It will also be you. Remember both Mr.and Mrs. Lyóu liked the chicken you roasted last time.
先生: 現在請你點火, 等我把 jī 放在 lú 子裏頭, 就 já 魚.	Please light the oven now. After I have put the chicken in the oven, we will fry the fish.

太太:	我們用兩個火，一個 já 魚，一個 jǔ myàn條兒.	We will use two burners: one for frying the fish, and one for cooking noodles.
先生:	Myàn 條兒太長，必得 chyē 短一點兒，可是也別太短了.	The noodles are too long; they need to be cut shorter, but not too short.
太太:	有魚，有 jī 的時候，應當先吃魚，有 jī 有 ròu 的時候，應當先吃 ròu.	When there is fish and chicken, fish should be served first. When there is chicken and meat, meat should be served first.
先生:	對了，我現在把 myànbāu 拿出來．我想已經好了.	Right. I will take the bread out now. I think it must be ready.
太太:	你快拿出來看看吧！	Hurry and take it out for a look.

先生: 已經 行了.	It is done.
太太: 真好; 比外頭買的 新-syan 多了.	It is really good. Much fresher than those bought outside.
先生: 我要 chángchang 我們的 tāng, 也許還要放 點兒 yán.	I want to taste our soup, maybe it needs a little more salt.
太太: Wén 着很 syāng. 行了.	It smells very good. It is O.K.
先生: 我想我們的菜都好了, 我們吃飯吧!	I think all our cooking is done; let us eat.
太太: 好. 我把 dāu子, chā子 都拿出來, 等會兒就吃.	Fine. I will take out the knives and forks and we will eat in a moment.
先生: 先吃 chīng菜, 吃了 chīng菜 再喝 tāng.	Let us have the vegetables first and have the soup after that.
太太: 你 shāu 點兒 開水, 因為	Will you boil some water because I

L. 54

吃完了飯我要喝茶。	want to have tea after meals.
先生：你不喝 kāfēi 麼？	Don't you drink coffee?
太太：今天我不想喝 kāfēi，想喝點兒茶. 你呢？	I don't want to drink coffee today, but want to have some tea. How about you?
先生：要是你喝茶，我也就喝茶吧.	I will have tea if you are having tea.
太太：你把水放在 lú 子上就可以來吃飯.	You can come to eat after you have put the water on the fire to boil.
先生：等水開了我再去吃吧.	I will go to eat after the water boils.
太太：不必等了. 水開了的時候，我們都聽得見.	You don't need to wait. We will hear it when it boils.
先生：好，我就去吃.	O.K. I am coming.

Vocabulary

36.	bǎitsài	白菜	N:	cabbage (Chinese)
37.	bǐděi	必得	A:	must
38.	cháng	嘗(嚐)	V:	taste
39.	chyānwàn	千萬	MA:	by all means, without fail, be sure
39.1	chyānwàn byé	千萬别	MA:	mustn't, by no means, don't ever
40.	dàu(shr)	倒(是)	A:	yet, on the contrary
41.	dyǎn hwǒ	點火	VO:	light a fire
42.	hújyāumyàr	胡椒麵兒	N:	ground pepper
43.	já	炸	V:	fry in deep fat
44.	jǔ	煮	V:	to boil, cook
45.	lúdz	爐子	N:	stove
46.	mǎlíngshǔ	馬鈴薯	N:	potato
47.	myàntyáur	麵條兒	N:	noodles
47.1	myàn	麵	N:	flour, noodles
48.	nùng	弄	V:	do, handle, make
49.	róu myàn	揉麵	VO:	knead dough
50.	syāu	削	V:	peel, sharpen (pencil,etc.)

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. Nevertheless, yet, but:

In English some sentences may have two clauses connected by such conjunctions as "nevertheless", "yet", "but", "on the contrary", etc. In Chinese, these two clauses are connected by búgwo, kěshr, jyòushr. In the first clause the word dàushr may be used with the verb in the positive preceding it and the verb again in the positive or in the negative following it. The verb before the dàushr means "so far as.....is concerned", and the verb after dàushr states the actual situation.

Wǒ chyù (dàu)shr ywànyi chyù, jyòushr wǒ méi chyán.	I am willing to go all right, but I don't have any money. (Literal translation: So far as going is concerned, I am willing to go, it is only that I don't have any money.)
Ywǎn (dàu) shr bùywǎn, kěshr lù bùhǎudzǒu.	It isn't that it is far, but the road is bad. (Literal translation: So far as distance is concerned, it is not far, but the road is bad.)
Tā chyù (dàu)shr chyù, kěshr tā bútài gāusyìng.	He will go all right, but he isn't too happy about it. (Literal translation: So far as his going is concerned, he will go, but he isn't too happy about it.)
Gwèi (dàu)shr hěn gwèi, kěshr wǒ jywéde wǒmen yīngdāng mǎi.	It is very expensive all right, but I still think we ought to buy it. (Literal translation: So far as being expensive is concerned, it is very expensive, but I think we ought to buy it.)

Translate the following:

1) Summer is hot all right, nevertheless I like it. (Literal translation: So far as being hot is concerned, summer is hot, but I like it.)

2) That perfume is extremely expensive all right, but I want to buy it. (Literal translation: So far as the perfume's being expensive is concerned, it is extremely expensive, but I want to buy it.)

3) That boy studies well all right, but he isn't very active. (Literal translation: So far as studying is concerned, that boy studies well, but he isn't very active.)

4) Steamships are comfortable all right, but they are not as fast as airplanes. (Literal translation: So far as comfort is concerned, steamships are comfortable, but they are not as fast as airplanes.)

5) Cabbages are cheap so far as that is concerned, but they aren't good to eat.

6) These vegetables are fresh so far as that is concerned, but they are very expensive.

7) He is not very tall so far as height is concerned, but he is too heavy.

8) So far as hunger is concerned, I am not very hungry, but I am thirsty.

9) So far as speed is concerned, it is slower by train, but it is more comfortable.

2. Must and mustn't:

In expressing the idea "must", děi or bìděi is used. Either of them may be preceded by yídìng for stress. However, děi or bìděi is not preceded by bù or mei. To express the idea "mustn't", byé is used, and it can be preceded by chyānwàn or kě or both for stress.

Nǐ yídìng děi chyù.	You certainly must go.
Tā yě bìděi lái.	He must come too.
Nǐ chyānwàn byé gàusung byéren.	You mustn't tell other people by any means.
Nǐ kě chyānwàn byé shēngchì.	You mustn't get angry by any means.

L. 54

Translate the following:

1) You must taste the soup before you put more ground pepper in it.

2) By all means you must mow the lawn today.

3) You mustn't study all the time; you must take a rest.

4) You certainly mustn't go out before you have tied up your shoe laces.

5) You certainly must take a bath in the morning before you go to the office.

6) I must shave every day.

7) Children must drink a lot of milk every day, and the milk should be fresh by all means.

8) You must go to the grocery to buy some spinach and carrots now, otherwise it will be too late.

9) You must by no means forget to buy rice because without rice I can't cook.

10) The bottle was dropped on the floor and broken. You mustn't be angry. I will buy a new bottle for you.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

"......dàushr......kěshr....."

這樣的 syāng水 好wén (dàu)是 好 wén,可是不便 yi.	Although this kind of perfume is fragrant, it is not cheap.

Examples:

1) 老張的 dzáhwòdyàn 大 (dau)是 不 大,可是買賣真好.	Although Old Jang's grocery is not large, the business is quite good.
2) 水 gwǒ跟 chīng 菜我們吃(dàu)是吃,可是不天天吃.	Although we do eat fruits and vegetables, we don't eat them every day.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Wǒ lái (dau)shr̀ yídìng lái,kěshr shémma shŕhou jyòu buyidìngle.

2) Jèige pínggwǒ hǎu kàn (dau) shr̀ hěn hǎukàn, kěshr bùhǎuchr̄.

3) Nèige yīchú hǎu (dau)shr̀ hǎu, kěshr búgòu dà.

4) Fàgwode hwàjwāngpǐn hǎu (dau)shr̀ hǎu, kěshr jēn gwèi.

5) Nǐde syīn shāfā hǎukàn(dau)shr̀ hǎukàn, kěshr bùshūfu.

6) Wáng Syānshengde háidz hwópwo (dau)shr̀ hwópwo, kěshr dōu busyǐhwan nyànshū.

7) Tāde shàngyīde kǒudàr dwō(dau)shr̀ dwō, kěshr bùnéng fàng hěn dwō dūngsyi.

8) Tāde gēr hǎutīng (dau)shr̀ hǎutīng, kěshr hěn nánsywě.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Your cabbage soup is tasty all right, but I think it takes too long to make it.

2) Although frying fish is not difficult, I will have to spend two hours cleaning the pans, the stove, and even the floor, afterwards.

3) I know how to knead the dough all right, but I am too tired to do it now.

4) After our dinner he paid the bill all right, but he said that it was too expensive.

5) As far as being pretty is concerned, she is not very pretty, but she is very polite.

6) I know how to use chopsticks all right, but I eat very slowly with chopsticks.

7) His house is not too far from here, but we don't know how to get there.

8) As far as being thirsty is concerned, I am not thirsty, but I can drink a little boiled water.

c. Answer the following questions with the pattern given above:

1) Dzài Měigwo mǎidedàu Jūnggwo báitsài ma?

2) Nǐ hwèi róu myàn ma?

3) Nǐ syǐhwan chr̄ mǎlíngshǔ ma?

4) Dūngtyan dzài jèige lóuli měige wūdz dōu yǒu lúdz ma?

5) Měigwo rén chr̄ myàntyáur ma?

6) Nèige shŕdżlùkǒur méiyou lùdēng ma?

7) Nǐ dzwòde jájī jēn hǎuwén. Wǒ kéyi cháng yikwài ma?

8) Wǒmen dzwótyan mǎide yú hwàile ma?

Pattern 2

The use of děi or bìděi and byé

"Shr̄長叫你去,你就得去."	"When the divisional commander asks you to go, you have to go."
"我懂了.別說了."	"I understand. Say no more!"

Examples:

1) 我告訴你一點兒事,你別生氣.	Let me tell you something, but you mustn't get angry.
2) 晚上我們得念書,所以不能去.	We have to study at night, so we cannot go.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Nǐ yídìng děi chyù ma?

2) Wǒ yídìng děi chyù, búchyù busyíng. Tāmen děngje wǒ ne.

3) Chr̄ jájīdàn de shŕhou, bìděi yùng hújyāumyàr, yàuburán bùhǎuchr̄.

4) Nǐ byé chr̄ tāde pínggwo. Tā jyòu mǎile lyǎngge.

5) Syàtsz byé dzài nèige pùdz mǎi dūngsyi. Nèige pùdzde dūngsyi búdàn bùhǎu, bìngchyě hái gwèi.

6) Wǒ děi syān jìnchyu kànkan, chǐng nǐ děng wǒ yìhwěr.

7) Dzwò mǎimai děi kèchi, yàuburán méiyou rén mǎi tāde dūngsyi.

8) Tāde lyǎn yǐjing húngle. Byé shwō tā le.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Spinach is good for you. You should eat more of it.

2) You should eat less. You are too heavy.

3) Don't forget to bring back some flour after work.

4) Your hands are dirty. You must wash them before dinner.

5) I will have to buy a new refrigerator, because my wife thinks our old one is too small.

6) The train is leaving in a minute. We must be getting on.

7) Don't worry. I will help you.

8) Don't stay up too late tonight. You will have to go to work tomorrow.

Homework

Gāu Chéng shr wǒ syǎumèimeide nán péngyou. Tā chángcháng dàu wǒ jyā lái kàn syǎumèimei. Yǒude shŕhou dzài wǒmen jyā chr̄fàn. Yǒu yítyan syǎumèimei wèn tā hwèi buhwei dzwòfàn. Tā shwō dzwòfàn hěn rúngyi. Tā búdàn hwèi, bìngchyě dzwòde hěn hǎu. Syǎumèimei jr̄dau tā búhwèi dzwò,   yàu gēn tā kāiwánsyàu. Syǎumèimei shwō, "Nǐ míngtyan dàu wǒmen jyā lái, dzwò yidyǎr fàn gěi wǒmen chángchang." Gāu Chéng shwō "hǎu". Dièrtyan Gāu Chéng jān dàile hěn dwō ròu gēn tsài láile. Gāu Chéng dàule chúfáng syǐ tsài, chyē ròu, mángjíle. Tā shwō búyung byéren bāngmáng, swóyi wǒmen dōu dzài kètīngli děng chr̄fàn. Yíge jūngtóu yǐhòu, Gāu Chéng chūlai jyàu wǒmen chr̄fàn. Tā dzwòle yìgwō   myàntyáur Syǎumèimei chr̄le yìkǒu jyòu gēn wǒ shwō, "Hújyāumyàr tài dwōle." Gāu Chéng yíge rén chr̄le sz̀wǎn. Syǎumèimei méichr̄. Wǒ jyòu chr̄le yìdyǎr. Hòulai Gāu Chéng wèn wǒmen dzěmmayàng. Wǒmen dōu shwō hěn hǎuchr̄.

In the parentheses write "T" for a correct answer and "F" for an incorrect answer.

( ) 1) Gāu Chéng shr̀ yíge nán háidz.

( ) 2) Syǎumèimei ài kāi wánsyàu.

( ) 3) Gēge bāng Gāu Chéng dzwòfàn.

( ) 4) Syǎumèimei yě dzài chúfángli chyē ròu.

( ) 5) Gāu Chéng yíge rén dzwòfàn.

( ) 6) Tā dzwòle yìgwō mǎlíngshǔ.

( ) 7) Syǎumèimei busyǐhwan Gāu Chéng dzwòde fàn.

( ) 8) Gāu Chéng méichr̄ tā dzwòde myàntyaur.

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.301-308)

301.	姐	jyě	N: elder sister	姐姐	- elder sister
				小姐	- Miss, polite for daughter
302.	妹	mèi	N: younger sister	妹妹	- younger sister
				姐妹	- sisters
303.	紅	húng	SV: red	紅花	- red flower(s)
304.	花	hwā	N: flower	花兒	- flower(s)
			[V: spend]	[花錢	- spend money]
305.	肉	ròu	N: meat	買肉	- to buy meat
				肉鋪	- meat market
306.	米	mǐ	N: hulled rice (grain)	買米	- to buy rice

L. 54

307.	口	kǒu	N: mouth	shù 口	rinse the mouth
				口 dàr	pocket
				十字路口	street or road intersection
				可口可 lè	Coca cola
308.	嗎	ma	P: (sentence suffix to simple questions)	你好嗎?	how do you do?

L. 54

B. 句子

1. 你家裏都有甚麼人？

2. 有哥哥．弟弟，姐姐，妹妹．

3. 你妹妹在家嗎？

4. 妹妹，姐姐都在家，哥哥出去買東西
去了．

5. 買甚麼去了？

6. 買米，買肉，買 chīng 菜，也買水 gwǒ ．

7. 到甚麼地方去買？

8. 就在那個十字路口兒左邊兒那個
dzáhwòdyàn 買．

9. 大姐姐花了很多錢買衣 shang 跟法國
syāng 水．

10. 我去拿 myàn 條兒，你點火， shāu 點兒
開水，好嗎？

11. 上 kè 的時候必得說中文，千萬別說 Yīng
文．

12. 這個花兒好看 dàu 是好看，可是不好 wén.

13. 為甚麼小孩子都喜歡喝可口可 lè ?

14. 母親對小妹妹說：「吃飯以前，一定得
洗手；要不然很容易有病.」

15. 他們兩姐妹差不多一樣高，可是姐姐
沒有妹妹那麼白.

16. 一位中國朋友教我作 jù 白菜. 我打算回
家作給我父母吃.

17. 高家最小的那位小姐已經七歲了，還
不會洗臉 shù 口呢.

18. Swéi 然我家裏有洗衣 jī，可是衣 shang
太多了，一直到夜裏十二點才把那
些衣 shang 洗完了.

19. 坐在第三個 yǐ 子上的那位外國小姐，
臉上有一點兒黑東西.

20. Chì 車, 方便 dàu 是方便，就是每小時不能
chāu 過六十五 lǐ，不夠快！

L. 54
C. Gù 事

王太太有三個女兒. 有一天, 他問他們三個人喜歡甚麼樣兒的男朋友.

大小姐說:「我喜歡會唱歌的, 因為我最愛聽唱歌. 我們 chwūn 天可以到 syāng 下去玩兒, 他唱歌給我聽多麼好 a !」

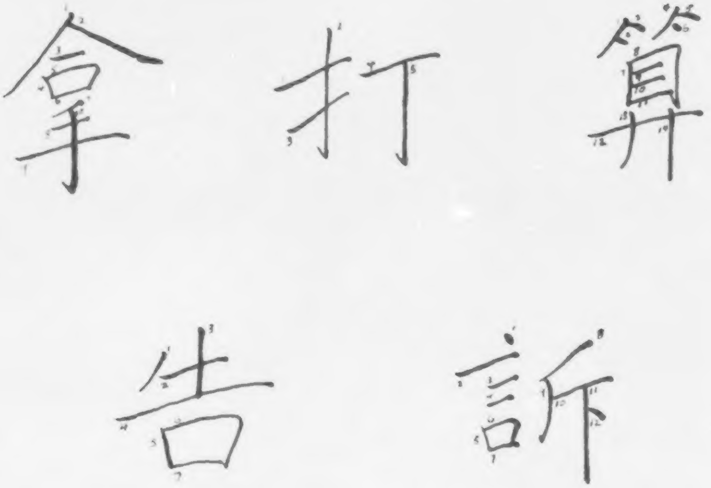
二小姐說:「我喜歡一個會畫畫兒的男朋友。到了 syà 天, 我們一塊兒出去畫畫兒。紅花兒, lyù shù , 他都可以畫下來 . 放在我們屋子裏, 天天都可以看。」

三小姐說:「我最喜歡會作飯的男人。他天天可以給我作飯吃。我要吃肉, 他就可以給我作肉。要吃飯, 他就可以給我用米作飯。」

王太太聽了以後說:「你們都說的很好。現在你們就出去找吧! Syīwang 你們都能找着你們喜歡的男朋友。」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 196-200)



B. Radicals

1. 手 (hand, 64) as in: 拿

2. 扌 (hand, 64) as in: 打

3. ⺮ (bamboo, 118) as in: 算

4. 口 (mouth, 30) as in: 告

5. 言 (words, 149) as in: 訴

C. Dictionary Drill

Sixty Common Chinese Radicals - "Miscellaneous" Group

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Examples
29	yù	又	Again	又 友 受
31	szù-tào-k'uàng	囗	Enclosure	四 回 因 國
37	tà	大	Large	太 天 奇 奬
57	kūng	弓	Bow	張 弱 弟 弩
62	kō	戈	Spear	戒 我 戴
116	hsüèh-tzù-t'óu-erh	穴	Cave	空 穿 窗

1. Exercise: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
窘			反		
弔			强		
窮			戟		
及			圈		
引			夫		
固			竈		
彎			困		
戰			叟		
奇			契		
叔			或		
園			宗		

2. Home Work: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
圍			叙		
突			圃		
取			奮		
囚			戴		
奘			彈		
弗			窪		
弘			制		
戲			截		
窰			帛		
孫			憂		
盔			窄		

LESSON 55

I. Military Subject

LǏ 少 wèi 跟 王 上士 跟着 他們的 jyūntwán 長 tsāngwān Ōujou 打 jàng 的 地方. Tsāngwān了 幾天 以後, 他們 兩個人 tán 話.

王:	LǏ 少 wèi, 我在 這兒 tsāngwān 以後, 覺得 Dé 國 jyūndwèi 很 lǐhai.	Lt. LǏ, after I have visited here, I feel that the German military forces were very strong.
LǏ:	可是 還 没有 美國的 fēijī 大 pàu lǐhai.	But they are not as strong as the United States with regards to airplanes and artillery.
王:	我 聽說 美國 jyūndwèi denglù了 以後, fúlwò 了 Dé 國 一個 上 jyàng, 兩個 中-jyàng 還 有 兩個 少 jyàng, 一個 jwǔnjyàng.	I heard that after American forces had landed, they captured a German general, two lieutenant generals, two major generals, and one brigadier general.

L. 55

LǏ:	我聽說那個上 jyàng 是他們的 tǔngshwài. 在他底下有幾個 jyūntwán?	I heard that the general was their supreme commander. How many armies were under him?
王:	我想他是 jítwánjyūn 的 sz̄lìng. 他 jřhwēi 兩個 jyūntwán. 那兩個 jyūntwán 的 jyūntwán 長都是中 jyàng.	I think he was the Commander of an army group. Under his command were two armies, which had two lieutenant generals as their commanders.
LǏ:	要是 tǔngshwài bèi fúlwǒ 了, 當然就不能再打下去了.	If their supreme Commander was captured, of course they could no longer continue to fight.
王:	在那次作 jàn 有幾個 jyūntwán 長, jyūn 長, 跟 shr̄ 長 bèi fúlwǒ 了. 那些 shr̄ 長都是少 jyàng. 他們的 tsānmóu 長也都 bèi fúlwǒ 了.	During that operation there were several army commanders, corps commanders and division commanders captured. All those division commanders were major generals. Their chiefs of staff were also captured.

LǏ:	聽說 gāng 一 dēnglù 的時候, Dé 國的 jyūndwèi dǐkàng 的很 lìhai.	I heard that right after the landing, the German troops put up a very powerful defense.
王:	Gāng 一 dēnglù 的時候, 美國 jyūndwèi 跟 Yīng國 jyūndwèi 的人 ywánswǔnshr̄ 都很大.	Yes, right after the landing, both the American and British troops suffered very great casualties.
LǏ:	Fángshǒu 法國南 bù 的 Dé 國 jyūndwèi 人 ywánswǔnshr̄ 也不少. 那時候還有別的國的 jyūndwèi 來 tsānjyā 作 jàn.	German troops defending southern France also suffered many casualties. At the time there were other nations sending troops to join in the fighting.
王:	我聽說美國 jyūndwèi 很	I heard that American troops, being very

	會 kwò 張 jàngwǒ, 把 Dé 國 jyūndwèi bāuwéi了. Dé 國 jyūndwèi 就 tóusyáng了.	able in exploitation, had the German troops surrounded, and therefore the German troops surrendered.
LǏ:	說到 bāuwéi, 我記得 gāng 打 jàng 的 時候, Dé 國 jyūndwèi bāuwéi 了 幾百萬 法國 jyūndwèi.	Talking about encirclement, I remember when the war started, the German troops had several million French troops surrounded.
王:	Dé 國 jyūndwèi 很會用 bāuwéi 的 辦法 打 dí 人.	German troops were very good in using encirclement tactics to fight their enemy.
LǏ:	可是 美國 跟 Yīng 國 用的 更好.	But American and British troops were even better in this.
王:	聽說 這次 dēnglù, 法國	I heard that in this campaign the French

	jyūndwèi 也 tsānjyā 作 jàn 了.	troops also participated.
LǏ:	Dēnglù 以後,法國 jyūndwèi 很有用,因為他們都願意快點兒打回家去.	After the landing, French troops were very useful because they all wished to fight their way quickly back home.
王:	對了.誰都愛自己的家.要是我們的家有 dí 人在那兒,我們也願意快點兒把他們打出去.	Right. Everyone loves his home. If there were enemy troops in our homes, we would also wish to fight them and chase them out quickly.
LǏ:	你知道我們明天要 tsāngwān 甚麼麼?	Do you know what we are going to inspect tomorrow?
王:	聽說我們明天還不在一塊兒.我還跟我的 jyūntwán 長去 tsāngwān.	I heard that tomorrow we still won't be going together. I will still be going with our army commander.

LǏ:	我呢?	How about me?
王:	我想您還跟您的 jyūntwán長去 tsāngwān.	I think you will still be going with your army commander on your inspection.
LǏ:	昨天我們在他們 sz̀lìng-bù看的那個 dēnglù dyànyǐng兒您覺得怎麼樣?	What do you think of the landing film that we saw at their headquarters yesterday?
王:	我覺得很好,要是我們沒到這兒來,我們就看不見那樣兒的 dēnglù 作 jàn.	I think it was very good. We wouldn't be able to see that kind of landing film if we hadn't come here.
LǏ:	那都是 jyūn 事 mìmì.	All of it was military secret.
王:	也許現在不是 jyūn 事 mìmì 了.	Maybe it is no longer a military secret now.

Lǐ:	我 syīwang 他們把那個 dyànyǐng 兒賣給我們、我們帶回去給我們 jyūndwèi 看看 .	I hope they will sell that film to us, so we can take it back for our troops to see.
王:	對了. 要是他們賣, 我們應當買.	Right. We should buy it if they are willing to sell.

II. Interpretation Exercise

LǏ 少wèi 跟美國lùjyūn Sz̄ 少wèi tán Ōujou dēnglù的情syìng,有人給他們fānyì.

LǏ:	你們 dēnglù 以後跟 dí 人打了幾天?	How many days did you fight with the enemy after landing?
Sz̄:	打了十幾天我們就把他們 bāuwéi 了.	We only fought with them for over ten days, and we had them surrounded.
LǏ:	他們 bèi bāuwéi 的有多少人?	How many of their troops were surrounded?
Sz̄:	有兩 twán 人.	There were two regiments.
LǏ:	他們 dǐkàng 的很 lìhai 麼?	Did they put up strong resistance?
Sz̄:	他們 dǐkàng 了幾天就 tóusyáng 了.	They resisted for a few days, and then surrendered.
LǏ:	你們把他們的 sz̄lìngbù 也 bāuwéi 了麼?	Did you also surround their headquarters?
Sz̄:	對了. 把他們的 sz̄lìngbù bāuwéi 了,所以他們的	Right. We had their headquarters surrounded, therefore their

	tŭngshwài 才 tóusyáng 的.	supreme commander surrendered.
LǏ:	他們的 tŭngshwài 是 上 jyàng 麼?	Was the supreme commander a full general?
SZ:	是一位 上 jyàng.	He was a full general.
LǏ:	他 怎麼 才 有 兩 twán 人?	Why did he have only two regiments?
SZ:	他 是 法國 南 bù 的 tŭngshwài jřhwēi十幾萬 jyūndwèi, 可是 在 我們 dānglù 的 這個 地方 他 就 有 兩 twán 人 在 那兒 fáng shŏu.	He was the supreme commander in the southern part of France, commanding more than one hundred thousand troops, but there were only two regiments defending the place where we landed.
LǏ:	那次 作 jàn 有 多少 jànfú?	How many people did you capture when they surrendered?
SZ:	在 我們 dānglù 的 地方 我們 fúlwŏ 了 他們 幾千 人.	We captured several thousand of their troops at the place where we landed.
LǏ:	真 不少. 為甚麼 他們	That was quite a lot. Why did they

	不打了?	give up fighting?
Sž:	我們 一 dānglù 就 kwò張 jàngwǒ. 他們 又沒有 shŕwu 了, 又沒有子 dàn 了, 也沒有 pàudàn 了.	As soon as we landed, we started an exploitation movement. They had no more food, no more bullets, and no more shells.
Lǐ:	他們 tóusyáng的時候, 帶來了 多少chyāng, 多少pàu?	How many guns did they bring along when they surrendered?
Sž:	他們的 chyāng pàu 都 帶來了.	They brought along all their guns.
Lǐ:	有多少 jř bùchyāng?	How many rifles were there?
Sž:	兩千多 jř.	More than two thousand.
Lǐ:	多少 tǐng jī關 chyāng?	How many machine guns?
Sž:	有 幾十 tǐng.	Several tens.
Lǐ:	多少門 lyóudànpàu?	How many howitzers?
Sž:	有大的, 有 小的, 一 gùng 有 五十多門.	There were big ones and small ones, totalling more than fifty.

Lǐ:	有多少門 高 shèpàu?	How many anti-aircraft guns?
Sž:	他們才有一 yíng 高shèpàu在那兒 所以 高shèpàu 不多.	They had only one anti-aircraft battalion there, so there were not many guns.
Lǐ:	Jànfángpàu 呢?	How about antitank guns?
Sž:	Jànfángpàu 真不少. 差不多有五十門 jànfángpàu.	There were really quite a lot of antitank guns. There were almost fifty antitank guns.
Lǐ:	山 pàu 呢?	How about mountain guns?
Sž:	不太多, 可是 yějànpàu 很多.	Not too many. But there were very many field guns.
Lǐ:	有多少 yějànpàu?	How many field guns?
Sž:	三十多門 yějànpàu.	There were more than thirty field guns.
Lǐ:	有多少火 jyànpàu?	How many bazookas?
Sž:	也有三百多門. 他們用火 jyàntǔng 打壞了我們很多 jàn 車.	Perhaps more than three hundred. They destroyed many of our tanks with rocket launchers.

Vocabulary

51.	bāuwéi	包圍	V:	encircle, surround, hem in, blockade
52.	bèi	被	CV:	by (sign of passive)
53.	dǐkàng	抵抗	V/N:	resist/resistance
54.	dyànyǐngr	電影兒	N:	movie
55.	fángshǒu	防守	V:	defend
56.	fúlwǒ	俘虜	V/N:	capture(POW)/POW
56.1	jànfú	戰俘	N:	POW
57.	jítwánjyūn	集團軍	N:	army group
58.	jìhwa	計劃	V/N:	plan/plan to
59.	jǐhwēi	指揮	V/N:	command
60.	jūngjyàng	中將	N:	Lt.General
61.	jwǔnjyàng	准將	N:	brigadier general
62.	jyūn	軍	N:	corps
63.	jyūndwèi	軍隊	N:	troops
64.	jyūnshr̀	軍事	N:	military affairs, military
64.1	jyūnshr̀ mìmì	軍事祕密	N:	military secret
65.	kwòjāngjàngwǒ	擴張戰果	VO/N:	exploit(military), exploitation
66.	rénywánswǔnshr̄	人員損失	N:	casualties
67.	shàngjyàng	上將	N:	full general
68.	shàujyàng	少將	N:	major general
69.	sz̄lìngbù	司令部	N:	headquarters
69.1	sz̄lìng	司令	N:	commander
70.	tóusyáng	投降	V/N:	surrender
71.	tsānmóujǎng	參謀長	N:	chief-of-staff
72.	tǔngshwài	統帥	N:	supreme commander

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. The various uses of tsái

Tsái is a fixed adverb and has two meanings: "only" and "then and only then" or "not until".

1.1 "Only"

There is usually a NU-M expression in the sentence.

Tā tsái sžle yíge ywè.	He died only a month ago.
Syàndzài tsái sāndyǎn jūng.	It is now only three o'clock.
Tsái láile yíge rén.	Only one person has come.

1.2 "Then and only then" or "Not until"

There is usually a time element or a conditioning element before the tsái clause.

1.21 Time element:

Wŏ míngtyan tsái dzŏu ne.	I am not going until tomorrow.
Tā chr̄wánle fàn tsái chyùde.	He didn't go until after he had his meal.
Tā chr̄wán fàn yòu dzwòle bàntyān, tsái dzŏude.	After he finished eating, he stayed for a long time before he left.

1.22 Conditioning element:

Yídìng dĕi tā lái, wŏ tsái gĕi chyán ne.	He must come before I will pay.
Yīnwei tā láile, wŏ tsái gĕi le chyán.	I paid only because he had come.

2. Tsái and dzài compared

In some kinds of actions, either tsái or dzài can be used. But in other kinds of actions, only one of them can be used and not the other.

2.1 Contemplated action: Either tsái or dzài can be used.

Wŏ dăswan míngtyān dzài chyù.	I plan to go tomorrow.
Wŏ syăng míngtyān tsái chyù ne.	I am not thinking of going until tomorrow.

2.2 Suggestion, request or command: Only dzài can be used, but not tsái.

Nĭ dzwèihău míngtyān dzài chyù.	It is best that you go tomorrow.
Wŏmen míngtyān dzài chyù, hău buhău?	How about our going tomorrow?
Nĭ míngtyān dzài chyù.	You go tomorrow.

2.3 Completed action: Only tsái is used, but not dzài.

Tā dzwótyān tsái chyùde.	He just went (there) yesterday.
Wŏ chr̄wán fàn tsái dzŏude.	I didn't leave until after I had eaten.

3. Jyòu and tsái compared

Jyòu means "right away" or "immediately", while tsái means "then and only then". Jyòu implies sooner than expected, while tsái implies later than expected.

Tā lyòudyan jūng jyòu láile.	He came when it was only six o'clock. (earlier than expected).
Tā lyòudyan jūng tsái láide.	He didn't come until six o'clock. (later than expected).
Tā chr̄wán fàn jyòu dzŏule.	He left immediately after eating.
Tā chr̄wán fàn tsái dzŏude.	He didn't leave until after eating.

Translate the following:

1) Now it is only five o'clock. Let us go at six o'clock.

2) There is only one man who wants to go.

3) Americans don't eat until they have had soup. The Chinese eat first and then have soup.

4) I won't go until I have had my coffee.

5) You will have to pay me before I deliver this table for you.

6) He came home immediately after he had done his shopping. (implying earlier than expected.)

7) He will not go home until he has done his shopping.
(implying later than expected.)

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

The uses of tsái

你的 bīngsyāng 不是才買了一年麼?怎麼已經壞了?	Isn't it just a year that you bought your refrigerator? How come it is already out of order?
到舊 jīn山去的火車下wǔ才開呢.	The train to San Francisco won't leave until the afternoon.
我 cháng了才能告訴你好吃不好吃.	I'll have to taste it before I can tell you whether it's good (to eat) or not.

Examples:

1) 現在還早,才八點鐘.我們等一會兒去吧.	It's still early, only eight o'clock. Let's wait a while before going.
2) 他們明天才來呢.	They won't be coming until tomorrow.
3) Mǎlíngshǔ 壞了我才 rēng-的.	The potatoes were spoiled before I threw them away.
4) 你得念了書才可以回家.	You must (first) study before you return home.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Wǒmende Tǔngshwài jīnnyan tsái sānshrjyǒu swèi.

2) Wǒmen bāuwéile nèige shān shŕèrtyan, dzwèihòu tsái fúlwǒle shŕchíge jànfú.

3) Tāmen shwō shàngge lǐbài tsái kànle yíge dyànyǐngr.

4) Dírende pàudàn gēn dz̆dàn dōu dǎwánle tsái tóusyángde.

5) Wǒ tsái tīngshwō dzài Sz̄lìngbù jr̆hwēi dzwòjànde shr̀ Wáng Shàujyàng.

6) Wǒmende fēijī bǎ dírende jèndì dǎhwàile yǐhòu, wǒmen tsái dēnglù de.

7) Yàushr you jànfángpàu wǒmen tsái néng dǐkàng dírénde jànchē.

8) Tā fùchin tsái shr shàngjyàng, tā yídìng búshr.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) It is only 120 miles from here to San Francisco.

2) The chief-of-staff did not come until four o'clock in the afternoon.

3) You would not like it until you had tried it once.

4) They should have resisted until their casualties had become too heavy.

5) He did not leave here until I gave him the money.

6) It is only five o'clock. Only one guest has arrived.

7) I won't go unless you go.

8) He said he was tired and would sleep until tomorrow morning.

L. 55
Pattern 2

tsái and dzài compared

你明天再去吧.	Why don't you (wait and) go tomorrow!
我們 tán 了一會兒他才走的.	We chatted for a while before he left.

Examples:

1) 你再到舊 jīn 山去的時候,我跟你一塊兒去.	When you go to San Francisco again, I want to go together with you. (or, I'll go with you.)
2) 我們才回來.等一會兒再去.	We've just come back. Let's wait a while before going.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Gwò yìhwěr dzài tán ba.

2) Gwò lyǎngtyan dzài jyàn ba.

3) Wǒmen syàlǐbài dzài chyù kàn tā.

4) Chǐng nǐ dzài gěi wǒ yíkwai táng.

5) Tāmen dzwótyan tsái dzǒu.

6) Tāmen chr̄le fàn tsái hwéijyāde.

7) Dzwótyan dzài jyēshang tā jyàu wǒ, wǒ tsái kànjyan tā de.

8) Tā sùngle dūngsyi, wǒmen tsái chǐngde tā.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) I was just over to his house yesterday.

2) He did not finish writing that book until last month.

3) Let us talk about it later.

4) Please tell him not to go there anymore.

5) If you cannot go there today, go there tomorrow.

6) We did not start the second book until we had finished the first one.

7) Will it be all right if you give him the money tomorrow?

8) He is not home today. We will deliver his book to him tomorrow morning.

Pattern 3

jyòu and tsái compared

他喝了茶就上 lóu 了.	He went upstairs after having tea.
他喝了茶才上 lóu 的.	It was after drinking tea that he went upstairs.

Examples:

1) 他今天就到了.	He arrived today, (earlier than expected).
2) 他今天才到的.	It was today that he arrived, (later than expected).
3) 王少 jyàng 看了 dyànyǐng-兒就回家了.	General Wang went home right after he had seen the movie.

4) 王少jyàng 看了dyànyĭng 兒才回家的.	It was after he had seen the movie that he returned home.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Wŏmen hái méichr̄fàn ne, tā jyòu jàu dìdi lái le.

2) Dìdi dĕngle tā bàntyan, tā tsái lái.

3) Tā dzwòsya yĭhòu jyòu chr̄fàn.

4) Tā dzwòsya yĭhòu wŏmen tsái chr̄fàn de.

5) Dírende sz̄lĭng yíkàn rénywánswŭnshr̄ tài dà, jyòu tóusyángle.

6) Sz̄lĭng kànjyan rénywánswŭnshr̄ tài dà tsái tóusyángde.

7) Wŏmende jyūndwèi bāuwéile díren sānge lĭbài, díren tsái tóusyáng.

8) Wŏmende jyūndwèi bāuwéile díren yĭtyan, dírén jyòu tóusyángle.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) When he came, the dinner was not yet ready. It was only four o'clock.

2) He did not come until eight o'clock. Most of the guests were gone.

3) They all left immediately after dinner.

4) We came home as soon as we had finished our shopping.

5) He arrived at the train station before the train came in.

6) He did not arrive at the train station until the train came in.

7) He wanted to get there early. He left here an hour ago.

8) Do you know what time it is? It is nine o'clock already, and you are just having your supper.

Homework

A. Read vocabulary

B. Answer the following questions:

1) Tóusyángde díren jyàu shémma?
2) Shàujyàng bǐ jūngjyàng gāu ma?
3) Jūngjyàng bǐ shàujyàng gāu ma?
4) Shàujyàng bǐ shàngjyàng gāu ma?
5) Tǔngshwài yídìng shr̀ shàngjyàng ma?
6) Tsānmóujǎng dzwò jyūnshr̀ jìhwà ma?
7) Rénywánswǔnshr̄ dwōshau shr̀ jyūnshr̀mìmì ma?
8) Jànfú búshr díren ma? Wèishémma yīngdāng dwèi tāmen hěn hǎu?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.309-315)

309.	您	nín	N: you (polite)	您知道麼?	- Do you know?
310.	午	wǔ	BF: noon	午飯	- noon meal
				上午	- forenoon
				中午	- noon
				下午	- afternoon
311.	世	shr̀	BF: 世界	世界(上)	- the world
312.	界	jyè	BF: 世界	世界	- the world
313.	並 竝 并	bìng	BF: 並且	並且	- moreover
314.	且	chyě	BF:	並且	- moreover

L. 55

315.	死	sž	V: die	jwàng死 - killed through collision

E. 句子　　　（溫習）(wēnsyí - review)

1. 世界上有多少國，您 jì 得嗎？

2. 不 jì 得了。並且 lyán 誰告訴我的，我也忘了。

3. 甚麼時候您進城了？有甚麼要緊的事情嗎？

4. 聽說今天上午城裏一 lyàng chì 車 jwàng 死了一個人。

5. 你應當把高小姐送我們的菜跟米放在桌子底下。

6. 上禮拜五他穿了一件白大衣，dài 着一個紅花兒。

7. 這些事，他還沒辦完就跑了，怎麼辦？

8. 不必來看我妹妹了，他的病已經好了。

9. 昨天晚上八點一刻左右，我差一點兒叫火車給 jwàng 死了。

10. 您那個老朋友很奇怪，我見過他八九次了，他還說不認識我。

11. 那樣兒的酒賣兩塊九毛五分錢.

12. 這條街比那條街短的多吧?

13. Tsānmóu 長說那個 dyànyǐng 兒太長, 他沒
工夫看.

14. 有的肉鋪不但賣肉賣菜, 並且也賣毛
jīn, yí 子.

15. 千萬別叫孩子怕你, 應當叫孩子愛你.

16. 今天是小弟弟第一天上學, 母親送他
到學校, 他哭了.

17. 坐船去 swéi 然便yi, 可是不方便, 我
們坐 fēijī 去, 怎麼樣?

18. 「穿紅大衣的那位小姐真不壞, yǎnjing
又大又黑, 對人也客氣極了.」
「謝謝. 他是我太太.」

19. 一到了四點三刻, 請你就 lì 刻一直到
高少 jyàng 家去.

20. 也許得等到我們老了, 才有 jī 會回北
平了.

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 201-205)

帶 孩 玩

喜 歡

B. Radicals

1. 巾 (napkin, 50) as in: 帶
2. 子 (child, 39) as in: 孩
3. 王 (jade, 96) as in: 玩
4. 口 (month, 30) as in: 喜
5. 欠 (owe, 76) as in: 歡

LESSON 56

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	那條河那兒有魚麼?	Are there any fish in that river?
	B:	我想那條河那兒有魚.	I think there are fish in that river.
	A:	你到那條河那兒去過麼?	Have you been to that river before?
	B:	我去過.我到那條河那兒去過三次.	Yes, I have. I have been to that river three times.
	A:	你在那條河那兒看見過魚麼?	Have you seen any fish in that river?
	B:	看見過.	Yes, I have.
2.	A:	你在那兒買的 bwó 菜?	Where did you buy the spinach?
	B:	在城裏頭那個 dzáhwòdyàn 那兒.	At the grocery store in town.
	A:	那個 dzáhwòdyàn 那兒都賣甚麼 chīng 菜?	What vegetables are sold in that grocery store?
	B:	那個 dzáhwòdyàn 那兒甚麼 chīng 菜都賣.	All kinds of vegetables are sold in that grocery.

L. 56

	A:	有中國白菜麼 ?	Are there Chinese cabbages?
	B:	那兒 有中國白菜，也有 húlwóbwo.	Yes, there are. There are also carrots.
3.	A:	LǏ 先生的 兒子 在那兒 呢 ?	Where is Mr. LǏ's son?
	B:	他在我們 家那兒.	He is at our home.
	A:	在 你們 家 那兒 作甚麼 ?	What is he doing at your home?
	B:	Tĭ 我們 jùng 花兒.	He is planting flowers for us.
	A:	也 tĭ 你們 jyāu 花兒 麼 ?	Does he water flowers for you too?
	B:	對了:	Yes, he does.
	A:	也 常常 tĭ 你們 twēi tsǎu 麼 ?	Does he often mow the lawn for you too?
	B:	一個 禮拜 一次.	Yes, once a week.
4.	A:	花兒 前頭 有 甚麼?	What is there in front of the flowers?
	B:	花兒 前頭 有 tsǎu 地.	There is the lawn in front of the flowers.
	A:	花兒 後頭 有 甚麼 ?	What is there behind the flowers?

B:	有 shù.	There are trees.
A:	你們的房子在那兒?	Where is your house?
B:	在 shù 後頭.	Behind the trees.
A:	我明白了. 要是從 tsǎu 地那兒說: tsǎu 地後頭有花兒.	Now I understand. If we start with the lawn, we may say that there are flowers behind the lawn.
B:	對了. 花兒後頭有 shù.	Right. And there are trees behind the flowers.
A:	對了. Shù 後頭有房子.	Right. And there is a house behind the the trees.
5. A:	您要買 syé 麼?	Do you want to buy shoes?
B:	對了. 要買一 shwāng hwáng 的.	Right. I want to buy a pair of brown ones.
A:	您看這 shwāng, 行不行?	Look at this pair, will it do?
B:	長短還不錯, 就是 kwān-jǎi 不太好.	The length is about right; only the width is not quite right.
A:	Kwānjǎi 怎麼了?	What is wrong with the width?

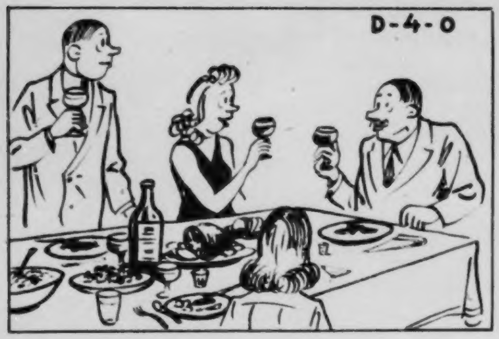
L. 56

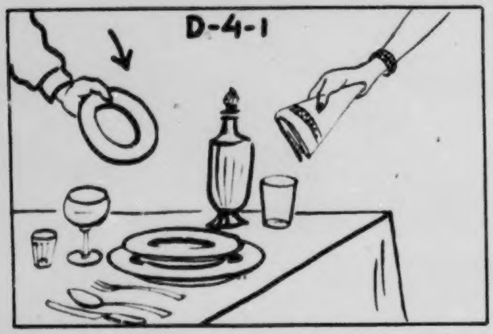
	B:	Jǎi 了一點兒.	A little narrow.
	A:	那 shwāng 怎麼樣?	How is that pair?
	B:	那 shwāng 又 kwān 了一點兒.	That pair is a little too wide.
6.	A:	我們在屋子裏頭吃飯, 好麼?	How about eating indoors?
	B:	不太好.	It isn't too good.
	A:	怎麼了?	Why?
	B:	屋子太小.我們要有四十人在一塊兒吃飯.	The room is too small. We will be having forty people eating together.
	A:	四十人在這兒吃飯, 當然不夠大.	Of course it isn't big enough for forty people to eat here.
	B:	我們能在 ywàn 子裏頭吃麼?	May we eat in the yard?
	A:	可以. 您看這些棹子行不行?	Yes, we may. Do you think these tables will do?
	B:	長短 dàu 是行, 可是高 ǎi 不行.	The length is all right, but the height won't do.
	A:	為甚麼?	Why ?

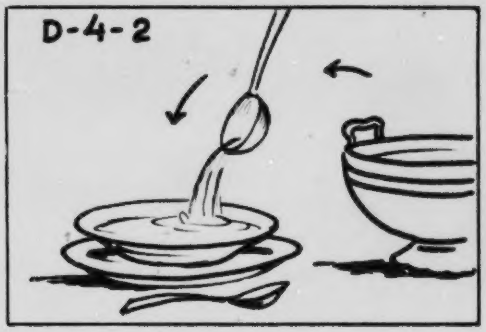
B:	這些棹子都太ǎi. 是小孩子用的.	These tables are too low. They are for children's use.
A:	您看那些棹子的高ǎi行不行?	Do you think the height of those tables will do or not?
B:	也不行.又太高了一點兒.	No, not right either. They are a little too high.
A:	怎麼辦?	What shall we do?
B:	我們學校的棹子行不行?	Will the tables at our school do?
A:	學校棹子的高ǎi, 正好.	The height of the tables at school is just right.
B:	我們到學校去bān.	Let us go to the school to get them.
A:	誰開車?	Who is going to drive?
B:	當然你開車.	Of course you are.
A:	你看我開車開的快慢行不行?	Do you think my speed is all right?
B:	有點兒太快,因為在學校裏頭每小時就	It is a little too fast,because in the school area

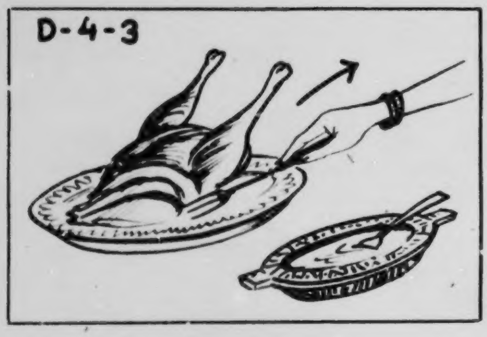
L. 56

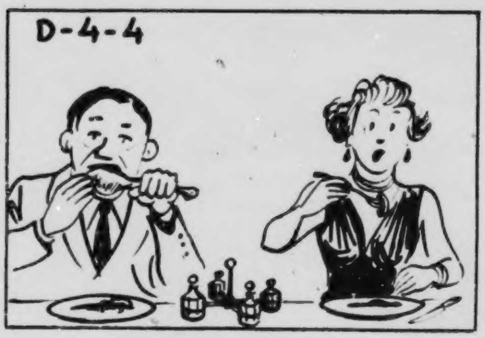
	能開十五 1Y.	you can only drive at fifteen miles per hour.
A:	好.我慢點兒吧.	O.K. I'll slow down.

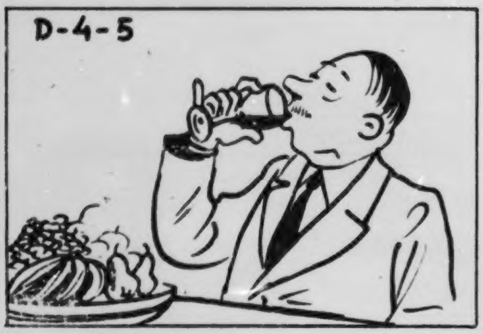

D-4-0

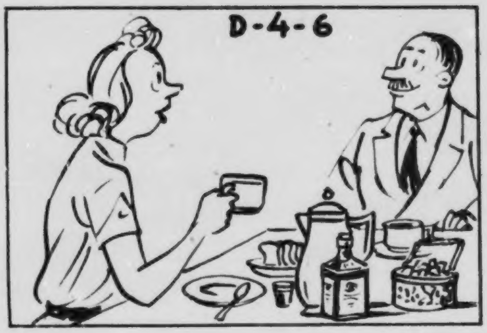

D-4-1


D-4-2


D-4-3


D-4-4


D-4-5


D-4-6

II. Basic Dialogue

Hwáng 先生跟他太太把飯作好了以後,就請他們的老朋友 LI 先生跟 LI 太太到他們家來吃飯. LI 先生跟 LI 太太就住在他們 páng 邊兒.

H 先生: 今天你們能到我們這兒來吃飯,我fēi常高syìng.	We are extremely happy that you can come to our place for dinner today.
H 太太: 請你們 swéi便喝點兒酒吧.	Have a little drink if you please.
L 先生: 謝謝.	Thank you.
L 太太: 你們作的菜太多了. 又有jī, 又有魚.	You have prepared too much food. There is chicken and also fish.
L 先生: 這是我們第幾次到你們家來吃飯了?	How many times have we come to eat at your place including this one?
H 太太: 我想是第三次吧.	I think this is the third time.

L	太太：你們這個飯棹真好，是新買的吧？	This dining table of yours is very nice. Did you buy it recently?
H	先生：對了. 以前那個kwānjăi跟長短我們都不喜歡，所以我們又買了這個飯棹.	That's right. We didn't like the width nor the length of the table we had before, so we bought this dining table.
H	太太：從前那個kwānjăi kwān一點兒，可是長短又短一點兒，所以我們不要那個了.	The one we had formerly was a little too wide in width and a little too short in length, so we didn't want that one anymore.
L	太太：今天的菜是誰作的？	Who cooked the dishes today?
H	先生：菜差不多都是我作的，可是別的事情都是我太太作的.	Almost all the dishes was cooked by me, but all the other things were done by my wife.

H	太太: 對了. 他把菜快作好了的時候,我就把酒bēi, bwōlibēi, dāu子, chā子, pán子, wǎn, 都放在桌子上了.	That's right. As he was about through with cooking, I set the table with wine glasses, tumblers, knives, forks, plates, and bowls.
L	先生: 你們的酒真好喝.	Your wine really tastes good.
H	先生: 再喝點兒.	Have a little more.
L	太太: 不喝了. 我喝的太多了.	No, thank you. I have had too much already.
H	太太: 那麽,我們現在就喝 tāng 吧. 美生,請你給他們 chéng tāng.	Then let's have soup now. Měishēng, please dish out the soup for them.
H	先生: 好. 這個 tāng 是我太太作的.	Fine. This soup was cooked by my wife.
L	先生: Tāng 真好.	The soup is really good.
H	太太: 您還要 hújyāumyàn 兒麽?	Do you need more ground pepper?
L	先生: 不要了. 正好.	No, I don't. It's just right.

H 太太:	LĬ 太太,請您不要客氣 您喜歡吃 jītwĕi, 還是喜歡吃 jī chr̀băngr?	Mrs. LĬ, please don't be so polite. Do you like drumsticks or chicken wings?
L 太太:	我喜歡吃 chr̀băngr.	I like to eat chicken wings.
H 先生:	LĬ 先生,您喜歡吃 甚麼?	What do you like, Mr. LĬ?
L 先生:	我要吃 jītwĕi.	I like drumsticks.
H 太太:	等我們吃完了飯可以 吃點兒水 gwŏ.	We can have fruit in a while after we have had our food.
H 先生:	今天我們買了很多 jyú 子, pútau, syāngjyāu, pínggwo, 都很新 syan.	Today we bought a great deal of oranges, grapes, bananas, and apples. They are all very fresh.
L 先生:	太多了.我想水 gwŏ 我 吃不下去了.	We've had too much food. I don't think I can take any fruit.
L 太太:	我也吃的太多了,所以 我想喝點兒茶.	I have had too much to eat too. Therefore I want to have some tea.

H 太太：先吃水 gwǒ.	Have some fruit first.
H 先生：茶 hú，茶 bēi 都 yùbei 好了. 我想 水也快開了.	The tea pot and tea cups are all ready, and I think the water is about to boil.
H 太太：上禮拜 Lyóu 先生送給我們很多中國茶，我想你們一定都喜歡喝.	Last week Mr. Lyóu gave us a lot of Chinese tea. I think both of you will like it.
(他們喝完了茶，LǏ 先生跟 LǏ 太太又坐了一會兒，就走了.)	(After tea, Mr. and Mrs. LǏ stayed a little while and then left.)

Vocabulary

73.	bwōlibēi	玻璃杯	N:	glass, tumbler
74.	bwódz	脖子	N:	neck
75.	cháhú	茶壺	N:	teapot
76.	chábēi	茶杯	N:	teacup
77.	chángdwǎn	長短	N:	length
78.	chéng	盛	V:	to fill (a dish with rice, soup, etc.)
79.	chr̀bǎngr	翅膀	N:	wing
80.	fànjwō	飯棹	N:	dining table
81.	jǎi	窄	SV:	be narrow
82.	jyǒubēi	酒杯	N:	wine cup
83.	kwān	寬	SV:	be wide
84.	kwānjǎi	寬窄	N:	width
85.	pútau	葡萄	N:	grapes
86.	syāngjyāu	香蕉	N:	banana
87.	twěi	腿	N:	thigh and leg
87.1	jītwěi	鷄腿	N:	chicken drumsticks

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. Placewords as objects

tsúng, *dàu* and *dzài* may only take a placeword as object, not just any noun. Most nouns can be made into a PW by adding a localizer. In English we may say "come to me" and "go to the city", but in Chinese we say *dàu wǒ jèr lái* and *dàu chéng lǐtou chyù*. *Jèr* and *lǐtou* are the localizers.

The most common localizers for nouns or pronouns are:

jèr (jèli)	here
nèr (nàli)	there
jèibyar	this side
nèibyar	that side
jèige dìfang	here
nèige dìfang	there
chyántou	the front
hòutou	the rear
chyánbyar	front side
hòubyar	rear side
dzwǒbyar	left side
yòubyar	right side

The most common localizers which can be added to nouns but rarely to pronouns are:

lǐtou	inside
wàitou	outside
shàngtou	top
syàtou	bottom
lǐbyar	inside
wàibyar	outside
shàngbyar	top
syàbyar	bottom
dǐsyà	underneath
-li	inside
-shàng	top

All proper nouns which are the names of places are PW and need no localizers. In addition there are certain common nouns which need no localizers as follows:

jyā	home
sywésyàu	school
pùdz	store
fàngwǎr	restaurant
kètīng	sitting room
fàntīng	dining room
shūfáng	study
chúfáng	kitchen

fēijīchǎng	airport
hwǒchējàn	railway station

There are nouns which by meaning should be considered PW, but they can not stand as the object of a coverb of motion without the addition of a localizer.

hé	river
hǎi	ocean
shān	hill
lù	road
chéng	city
jyē	street

Translate the following:

1) He has gone from the school to the city.

2) It is on top of the table in the study.

3) Will you drive from my place here to the airport?

4) There is a hill on the other side of the river.

5) We walked from the front of the house to the back.

6) We are coming to your store.

2. Quantity, quality, and degree

In English there are certain nouns of quantity, quality, and degree, such as height, weight, width, thickness, shade (of color), etc. In Chinese, one of the ways to express these ideas is to combine a pair of opposite stative verbs. The most common ones are:

chángdwǎn	length
dàsyǎu	size
gāuǎi	height
kwàimàn	speed
lěngrè	temperature
ywǎnjìn	distance
kwānjǎi	width
hǎuhwài	quality
dwōshǎu	quantity
syīnjyòu	age (condition)
gwèijyàn	expensiveness (cost or price)

L. 56

Translate the following:

1) Please tell me the length, width and height of this table.

2) The size of this pair of shoes is all right, but I don't know about the quality of the shoes.

3) When you write Chinese characters, you must write correctly. The speed is not important.

4) Do you know the distance to that hill?

5) Do you think the temperature of this water is all right?

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Placewords as objects

你在 chwānghu 那兒做甚麼?	What are you doing there at the window?
王先生在家麼?	Is Mr. Wang at home?

Examples:

1) 誰的小孩子在棹子上頭玩兒?	Whose children (are those that) are playing on the table?
2) 他們到飯 tīng 去了.	They have gone to the dining room.
3) 從學校到城裏頭坐火車要走三個鐘頭.	It takes three hours to go from the school to the city by train.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Tyānchi hǎude shŕhou háidzmen syǐhwan dzài wūdz wàitou chr̄fàn.

2) Tāmen dàu shūfáng chyu jǎu nǐ, nǐ yǐjing dzǒule.

3) Nǐ dàugwo nèige dǐfang ma?

4) Lǐ Syānsheng syīn mǎide fángdz dzài nèige shānshang.

5) Dzwótyan wǎnshang nǐ láide shŕhou wǒmen búdzai jyā, yīnwei wǒmen dōu dàu jyēshang chyù mǎi dūngsyi chyùle.

6) Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan dzài hǎibyār sànbù.

7) Chǐng nǐmen dàu lǐtou chyu dzwò.

136

8) Syānshengde shū dōu dzài jwōdz shàngtou. Sywéshengde shū dōu dzài jwōdz dǐsya.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Did you go to the beach yesterday?

2) I went to the city last night.

3) He came from San Francisco, not from New York.

4) Please go to the window and bring my book over here.

5) They all eat at the restaurant every day.

6) I was in the living room when he came.

7) The parking lot is in front of this building.

8) They are all in the kitchen. You can go in and talk with them.

c. Answer the following questions orally:

1) Nǐ yàu dàu nǎr chyù?

2) Nǐ míngtyan dàu tā jyā chyù ma?

3) Tā shr tsúng nǎr láide?

4) Nǐde chìchē dzài wàitou ma?

5) Nǐ dàu Jūnggwo chyùgwo ma?

6) Nǐde jyā dzài chéng lǐtou ma?

7) Wǒmende sywésyàu dzài hǎibyār ma?

8) Dzwótyan nǐ dàu chéng lǐtou chyùle ma?

Pattern 2

Quantity, quality, and degree

他們的高ǎi都一樣. Their heights are all the same.

Examples:

1) 那個東西的貴jyàn要看新舊,不是看大小.	The cost (expensiveness) of that thing depends on age (condition of usage), not on size.
2) 要是你知道路的遠近,你就可以算出來甚麼時候可以到.	If you know how far the route is, you can figure out when you are able to arrive.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Fēijīde kwàimàn yǒude shŕhou yàu kàn tyānchi hǎuhwài.

2) Jèi sānge wūdz li de chwānghu, gāuǎi dōu bùyiyàng.

3) Dūngsyi hǎuhwài nǐ yí kàn jyòu jr̄dau.

4) Wǒ děi kànle wǎnde dàsyǎu, tsái néng gàusung nǐ wǒ néng chr̄ jǐwǎn.

5) Nèige dìfangde lěngrè, dzǎushang gēn wǎnshang chà hěn dwō.

6) Ménde gāuǎi dōu shr chīchř ma?

7) Syàndzài shwěide lěngrè jèng hǎu, nǐ kéyi syǐdzǎu le.

8) Chēde hǎuhwài tsúng wàitou kànbuchulái.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) No one knows the height of that mountain.

2) He said that the quantity was not important but that the quality was.

3) These two tables are of the same length.

4) The width of a small car is about the same as that of a big car.

5) The temperature in this room is very comfortable.

6) The shoes in that store are expensive, but their quality is known to all the people in this town.

7) The policemen pay a lot of attention to the speed of cars passing by here.

8) Do you know the size of your hat?

Homework

A. Story

Gāu Jūng-fāng dzwótyan láile. Tā gěi háidz dàile sye pútau gēn syāngjyāu. Háidzmen dōu hěn syǐhwan tā.Ná cháhúde ná cháhú, ná chábēide ná chábēi. Dōu yau gěi Gāu Jūng-fāng dàu chá. Lǎu Gāu kànjyan fànjwōshang yǒu yìsyǎupíng jyǒu, tā shwō: "Shéi hē jyǒu le?" Wǒ tàitai shwō "Gāu Syānsheng hē yìdyǎr ba. Jèi shr Fàgwo jyǒu. Hěn hǎuhē." Gāu Jūng-fāng tsúng jwōdzshang náchi yíge jyǒubēi lai shōw:"Hǎu,gěi wǒ yìdyǎr chángchang." Wǒ syǎng hē jyǒu méiyou tsài dzěmma syíng. Wǒ bǎ bīngsyāng lǐtoude jīchr̀bǎng gēn jītwěi dōu náchulaile. Lǎu Gau kànjyan chr̄de dūngsyi, gāusyìngjíle. Tā syān shwō: "Wǒ chr̄bulyǎu jèisye." Hòulai tā shwōchu jēn hwà lai le, tā ywánlái hái méichr̄ wǎnfàn ne. Wǒ tàitai tīngshwō tā méichr̄fàn, yòu gěi tā kǎule jǐkwai myànbāu. Tā yíge rén bǎ jīchr̀bǎng, jītwěi dōu chr̄le. Wǒ kàn bīngsyāng lǐtou hái yǒu jībwódz. Wǒ wèn tā: "Nǐ chr̄ buchr jībwódz?" Tā shwō: "Wǒ dzwèi ài chr̄ jībwódz." Wǒ bǎ jībwódz gěile tā,tā jēn chr̄le. Chr̄wanle , ta shwō: "Jēn

buhauyìsz. Wǒ bǎ nǐmende jyǒu dōu hēle, jī yě dōu chr̄le." Wǒ tàitai shwō: "Gāu Syānsheng, búyau kèchi. Yǐhòu chǐng cháng lái." Lǎu Gāu shwō: "Hǎu, hǎu, syèsye. Wǒ yǐhòu yídǐng cháng dàu jèr lái, yǒu hǎu jyǒu hǎu tsài, wǒ hái bulái ma?"

B. Answer the following questions:

1) Gāu Syānsheng hē jyǒu ma?
2) Wǒde háidz syǐhwan Gāu Syānsheng ma?
3) Gāu Syānsheng gěi háidz mǎile shémma?
4) Gāu Syānsheng wèishémma bùhauyìsz?
5) Wǒ jyāde fànjwōshang yǒu shémma?
6) Háidzmen gěi Gāu Syānsheng dàu jyǒu le ma?
7) Gāu Syānsheng dàu wǒ jyā lái yǐchyán chr̄fànle ma?
8) Gāu Syānsheng bùchr̄ jī ma?
9) Wèishémma wǒ tàitai gei tā kǎu myànbāu?
10) Jībwódz hǎuchr̄ ma? Gwèi ma? Nǐ chr̄ ma?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.316-323)

316.	休	syōu	BF: 休息	休息 - rest, take a vacation
317.	息	syī	BF: 休息	休息 - rest, take a vacation
318.	乾 (干)	gān	SV: dry	乾淨 - clean
319.	淨 凈	jìng	BF: 乾淨	乾淨 - clean
320.	春	chwūn	BF: spring	春天 - spring
321.	夏	syà	BF: summer	夏天 - summer
322.	秋	chyōu	BF: autumn	秋天 - autumn

323. 冬 dūng BF: winter 冬天 - winter

L. 56

B. 句子

1. 我太 lèi 了. 應當休息幾天.
2. 不必休息幾天, 半天就行了.
3. 城裏頭那個 lyǔ 館乾淨?
4. 一年可以 lyǔ 行幾次?
5. 四次. 春天一次, 夏天一次, 秋天一次, 冬天一次.
6. 你作的句子不夠長, 並且有的字也寫錯了.
7. 每天下了 bān 我都在等車的時候看報.
8. 我們家裏的客 tīng 跟飯 tīng 的大小一樣.
9. 您給老王買的那 tàu 睡衣長短, kwānjǎi 正好.
10. 現在最新的 fēijī 的快慢每小時是多少 lǐ?
11. 外國話 dàu 是不難學. 就是很容易忘了.
12. 請你幫我忙, 用中文寫一 fēng 信給我

父親

13. 每天晚上我得給我孩子唱一個歌兒，
他才 kěn 睡覺。

14. 我打算下午把我的表送到鐘表鋪去。
表壞了，不知道時候，不方便。

15. 他告訴我，要請我喝酒。我不懂，為
甚麼飯棹上沒有酒 bēi .

16. 這張畫兒是誰畫的？怎麼山上，路邊
兒都是人，lyán 河裏的船上也有很
多人。

17. 聽說世界上最高的 lóu 不在美國了。
Dé 國西邊兒有一個 lóu 比 Nyǒuywē 的
那個更高。

C. Gù 事

張奇生是一個二十多歲的男人，他有
一個女朋友，叫高中方。

張先生很喜歡高小姐，所以他每天穿

的乾乾淨淨的去找高小姐.

有一天，張先生說:「我每天又念書，又作事，很 lèi，應當休息休息.」高小姐說:「你不能在你家裏休息嗎?」張先生說:「在家裏休息不太好，最好出去玩兒玩兒.」

高小姐說:「你想甚麼時候去，到那兒去?」張先生說:「我想現在就去，因為現在正是春天. 春天出門最有意思.」高小姐說:「要是你現在去，我不能跟你去. 因為我得上學. 要是你夏天去，我可以去.」張先生說:「好吧! 我們夏天去.」高小姐說:「到那兒去?」張先生說:「到美國南 bù 去，好嗎?」高小姐說:「要是到南邊兒去，我不能去，因為我怕 rè. 夏天南邊兒很 rè.」張先生說:「秋天到南邊兒去，好嗎?」高小姐說:「秋天我也得上學.」張先生說:「冬天去，好吧!」高小姐說:「冬

天到南邊兒去玩兒，　很好。不
過，我們沒 jyéhwūn ，怎麼能一塊兒去呢？

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 206-210)

喝 點 酒

睡 覺

B. Radicals

1.	口	(mouth, 30)	as in:	喝
2.	黑	(black, 203)	as in:	點
3.	酉	(new wine, 164)	as in:	酒
4.	目	(eye, 109)	as in:	睡
5.	見	(see, 147)	as in:	覺

LESSON 57

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	這幾天怎麼没看見老白?	Why haven't I seen Old Bái these few days?
	B:	聽說他現在没錢了, 所以不能出來了.	I heard he is broke and can't go out.
	A:	上月他不是還很有錢麼?	Wasn't it last month that he still had a lot of money?
	B:	是的. 他的錢現在都用完了.	Yes, that is true. Now he has used up all his money.
	A:	我們應當怎麼辦呢?	What should we do?
	B:	我想給他送點兒錢去.	I want to send him some money.
	A:	好. 你想送給他多少?	Fine. How much do you want to send him?
	B:	五百塊, 你呢?	Five hundred dollars. How about you?
	A:	我送不起五百塊. 我想兩百塊我送得起.	I can't afford to send him five hundred dollars. I think I can afford to send him two hundred.

	B:	好 我們 現在 就去.	That is fine. Let us go now.
2.	A:	請你把我的飯棹 bān 進來.	Please move my dining table inside.
	B:	不行. 我想 bān 不進去.	That can't be done. I don't think it can be moved in.
	A:	為甚麼?	Why?
	B:	門太 jǎi, 飯棹太 kwān, 所以 bān 不進去.	The door is too narrow and the dining table too wide. Therefore it can't be moved in.
	A:	那個門太 jǎi?	Which door is too narrow?
	B:	就是這個門太 jǎi.	It's this door that is too narrow.
	A:	要是從那個門 bān 進來呢?	What if you move it through that door?
	B:	我想可以. 因為那個門 kwān 得多.	I think it can be done because that door is much wider.
3.	A:	我寫的那個字, 你看見了麼?	Did you see the character I wrote?
	B:	我看見了, 可是我不認識.	I saw it, but I do not recognize it.

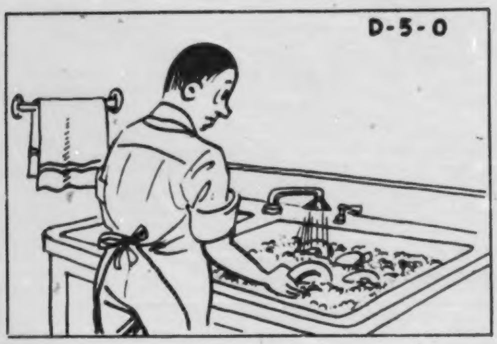
A:	要是我寫的再小一點兒，你還看得見麼？	If I write it a little smaller, can you still see it?
B:	我還可以看得見，可是我想我看不chīngchu.	I can still see it, but I don't think I can see it clearly.
A:	我說的話你聽見了麼？	Did you hear what I said?
B:	聽見了，可是没聽懂你的意思.	Yes, I heard it, but I didn't understand what you said.
A:	你聽 chīngchu 了麼?	Did you hear it clearly?
B:	也没聽 chīngchu.	No, I didn't hear it clearly either.
A:	我作的飯你 wén 見了麼？	Did you smell the food I cooked?
B:	Wén 見了. 我的 bí 子好極了.	Yes, I did. My nose is excellent.
A:	Wén 見甚麼了？	What did you smell?
B:	Já jī. 對不對?	Fried chicken. Is that right?
A:	對了.	Right.

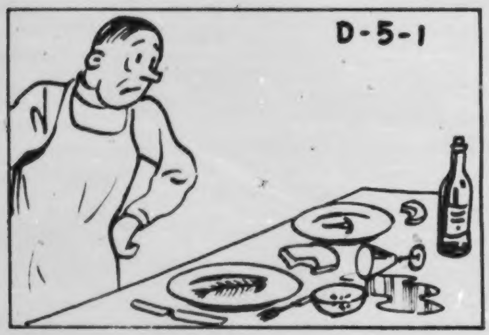
B:	真好wén. 我可以吃點兒麼?	It really smells nice. Can I eat a little?
A:	不行. 等一會兒給你吃.	No, you can't. I will let you eat it a little later.
B:	不行. 我等不了了!	That won't do. I can't wait.
A:	為甚麼?	Why?
B:	我一wén見já jī, 就得lì刻吃.	I have to eat some as soon as I smell fried chicken.
4. A:	你看jǐngchá jwēi 得上jwēi 不上 那lyàng jīchìjyǎutà 車?	Do you think the policeman can catch up with the motor-cycle?
B:	Jwēi 得上. 看, 已經 jwēi 上了.	He can. Look, he already did.
A:	那個人 為甚麼 沒 lìkè tíng 住他的 jīchìjyǎutà 車?	Why didn't that man stop his motor-cycle right away?
B:	下 pwō 的時候 得慢慢兒的開 才 tíng得住.	He had to slow down before he could make a full stop while he was driving downhill.
A:	上次要是 沒有 ywán 子dàn,	Last time if we hadn't

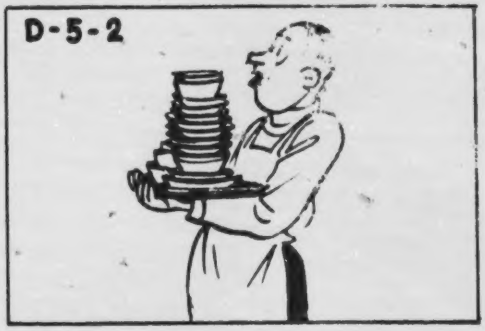
		我們打得 bài 打不 bài 日本？	had the atom bomb, could we have defeated Japan?
	B:	就是沒有 ywán 子 dàn，也打得 bài 日本.	Even if we hadn't had the atom bomb, we still could have defeated Japan.
	A:	日本打 bài 了以後，日本 jànfú 回得了家回不了家？	After Japan was defeated, could the Japanese POW's go back to their homes?
	B:	有的回得了家，有的回不了家.	Some of them could, but some couldn't.
6.	A:	用這個小 dāu 子 chyē 西 gwa chyē 得開麼？	Can a water melon be cut up with this small knife?
	B:	Chyē 得開 dàu 是 chyē 得開，可是得 chyē 半天.	It can be cut up all right, but it'll take a long time.
	A:	要是我很快的就 chyē開了，你 ràng 我吃幾塊？	How many pieces will you let me have if I cut it very quickly?
	B:	你吃得了多少，我 ràng	I'll let you eat as

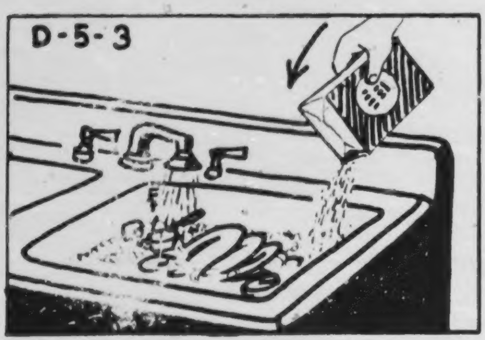
L. 57 你吃多少。 many as you can.

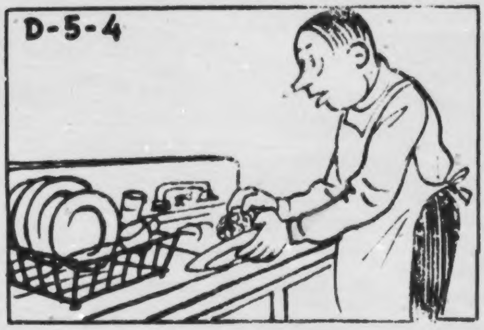
L. 57

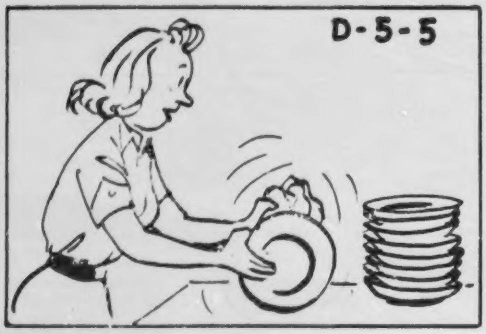

D-5-0

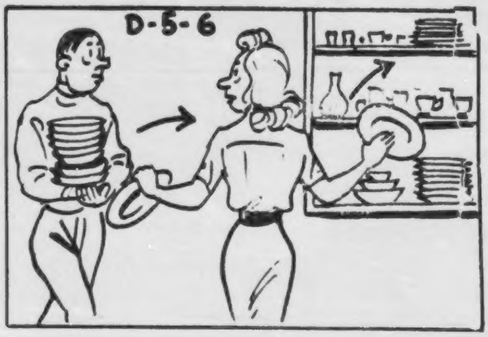

D-5-1


D-5-2


D-5-3


D-5-4


D-5-5


D-5-6

II. Basic Dialogue

客人走了以後，Hwáng美生得把飯tīng跟chú房都shōushr shōushr.

美生:	吃飯的時候菜多當然很好，可是吃完了洗wǎn的事情真máfan.	It is very nice to have many kinds of food when dining, but it is really troublesome washing the dishes after eating.
太太:	你是不是要我幫你洗wǎn呢?	Does it mean that you want me to help you wash the dishes?
美生:	我今天一個人洗不了這麼多wǎn，這麼多pán子.	I can't wash all these many bowls and dishes by myself today.
太太:	那麼你明天再洗吧.	Then you can wash them tomorrow by yourself.
美生:	要是明天再洗，我今天晚上就一夜都睡不着覺了.	If these are left until tomorrow to be washed, I won't be able to sleep all night tonight.

太太:	要是你一定要今天洗, 我可以 tsā, 也可以把 pán子, wǎn都 shōu起來.	If you have to wash them today, I can dry them and put the bowls and dishes away.
美生:	好. 我先把飯桌 nùng 乾淨了.	Fine. I will clear the dining table first.
太太:	對了. 飯桌上有很多吃 shèng下的東西; 並且還有一個酒bēi dǎu 了.	That's right. There is a lot of food left over on the dining table. There is also a wine glass tipped over.
美生:	對了. 那個酒 bēi 裏頭 shèng下的酒都 sǎ 了.	Right. The wine left over in that glass has been spilt.
太太:	你快點兒把那些 dzāng pán子, wǎn, chywán拿到 chú房裏頭來.	Hurry and bring into the kitchen all the dirty dishes and bowls.
美生:	你作甚麼呢?	What are you going to do?
太太:	我去 tsā 飯桌.	I will go and wipe the dining table.
美生:	Yí子fěn 在甚麼地方?	Where is the soap powder?

L. 57

太太：就在 chú房裏頭.你自己找吧.	Right in the kitchen. Go find it yourself.
美生：我找着了.	I found it.
太太：用 rè 水洗,才洗得乾淨.	Wash them with hot water so they can be washed clean.
美生：是的、自從我們 jyéhwūn 起,差不多老是我洗 wǎn.	Yes. I have been washing the dishes ever since we got married.
太太：你覺得 jyéhwūn 對你不好麼?	Do you think that marriage is not good for you?
美生：Jyéhwūn 當然對我很好,可是我覺得洗 wǎn 太 máfan 了.	Of course marriage is good for me, but I think washing dishes is too much trouble.
太太：你快洗吧!	Hurry up and do your dishes!
美生：有的已經快 gān 了,請你來 tsā.	Some are almost dry; please come and wipe them.
太太：好.我就去 tsā.	O.K. I will come to wipe them.

美生：你 tsā pán 子的時候，我洗 gwō，洗 lú 子.	While you are drying them, I will wash the pots and the stove.
太太：對了. Lú 子一定很 dzāng，因為我們作了很多菜.	That's right. The stove must be very dirty as we have cooked a lot of food.
美生：Lú 子上 yóu 很多. 我 já 魚的時候，用 yóu 用的很多.	There is grease all over the stove. I used quite a lot of oil in frying the fish.
太太：我都 tsā 完了. 請你快點兒幫着我 shōu 起來.	I have done the drying. Please hurry and help me put them away.
美生：都放在那兒?	Where do they go?
太太：還放在 ywán 來的地方.	Put them back in their original places.
美生：我知道，pán 子，wǎn 都放在 wǎngwèi 裏頭.	I know. Dishes and bowls go into the cupboards.
太太：酒 bēi，bwōlibēi，茶 hú，	Yes. Wine glasses, tumblers, tea pot

L. 57

	茶bēi 也都放在 wăngwèi裏頭.	and tea cups all go into the cupboards too.
美生:	放得下麼 ?	Is there room enough?
太太:	放得下.	Yes, there is.

Vocabulary

88.	chywán	全	SV/A:	be whole, complete, entire/all, entirely
89.	dǎu	倒	V:	fall down , topple over
90.	dz̀tsúng	自從	MA:	since , ever since
91.	gān	乾	SV:	be dry
92.	jyēji	階級	N:	rank
93.	jyéhwūn	結婚	VO:	marry
94.	máfan	麻煩	V/N:	trouble
95.	sǎ	洒	V:	spill
96.	shèngsyade	剩下的	N:	leftover
97.	shōu	收	V:	receive; put away
98.	shōushr	收拾	N:	fix, repair, clean up, put in order, straighten out
99.	wǎngwèi	碗櫃	N:	cupboard
100.	yídzfěn	胰子粉	N:	soap powder
	or féidzàufěn	肥皂粉	N:	soap powder
101.	ywánlái	原來	MA/SV:	originally, as a matter of fact/original

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. Resultative verb compounds (further explanation)

Resultative verb compounds in the actual and potential types were introduced in Lessons 36 and 37. Following are some more resultative verb compounds composed of new verbs introduced after Lesson 37 and old resultative verb endings introduced before Lesson 37, or new endings introduced after Lesson 37.

1) -bài

dǎbài	defeat

2) -bǎu

chr̄bǎu	eat enough

3) -chǐ

mǎidechǐ	can afford to buy
chr̄dechǐ	can afford to eat
jùdechǐ	can afford to live at

4) -chyù

hwéichyu	go back

5) -dàu

dzǒudau	walk to
shōudau	receive

6) -gān

shàigān	dry in the sun
tsāgān	wipe dry
kǎugān	roast dry

7) -gānjing

tsāgānjing	erase clean, wipe clean
syǐgānjing	wash clean
shwāgānjing	brush clean
shōushrgānjing	clean up
sǎugānjing	sweep clean

8) -hǎu

nùnghǎu	finish making, finish putting in order
syǐhǎu	finish washing
shwāhǎu	finish brushing
tsāhǎu	finish wiping

kòuhǎu	finish buttoning
gwàhǎu	hang up securely
chyēhǎu	finish cutting
jáhǎu	finish frying
kǎuhǎu	finish roasting
syāuhǎu	finish peeling
shōuhǎu	put away

9) -jáu

jwēijau	catch by chasing
jwàngjau	hit in collision

10) -jù

tíngju	stop fully
jìju	remember well
náju	hold fast

11) -jyàn

wénjyan	smell

12) -kāi

líkai	leave
chyēkai	cut open

13) -lyǎu

jìdelyǎu	can remember
chídelyǎu	can ride (bicycles, horseback)
syǐdelyǎu	can wash
shāudelyǎu	can burn
jádelyǎu	can fry
sǎdelyǎu	can spill

14) -shàng

jwēishang	chase and catch up
jwàngshang	collide
gwàshang	hang up
chíshang	ride on

15) -syà

dzwòsya	sit down

16) -swèi

jwàngswèi	smash up
chyēswèi	cut fine

Translate the following:

1) Germany was defeated in the Second World War.

2) I can't afford to live in a big house like this.

3) It is too late now. I can't go back.

4) Tomorrow he will receive the letter I wrote yesterday.

5) Have you wiped the dishes dry?

6) I will have to clean up my room before I go to eat.

7) After you have hung up your clothes and hat, you can come to have tea.

8) Did you smell what was cooking in the kitchen?

9) Can you remember the names of all the people here?

10) He runs very fast; I can't catch him.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Resultative Verb Compounds

我看見他了.	I saw him. (actual)
你看得見他麼?	Are you able to see him? (potential)

Common endings to resultative compound verbs

-見	-到	-懂	-去
-着	-好	-了	-来
-完	-起	-上	-下

Some common resultative verb compounds

Actual type		potential type	
positive	negative	positive	negative
吃 bǎu 了	沒吃 bǎu	吃得 bǎu	吃不 bǎu
回去了	沒回去	回得去	回不去
shōu 到了	沒 shōu 到	shōu得到	shōu 不到
sǎu 乾淨了	沒 sǎu 乾淨	sǎu得乾淨	sǎu不乾淨
nùng 好了	沒 nùng好	nùng得好	nùng不好
聽見了	沒聽見	聽得見	聽不見
gwà上了	沒 gwà 上	gwà得上	gwà 不上
坐下了	沒坐下	坐得下	坐不下
賣完了	沒賣完	賣得完	賣不完
看懂了	沒看懂	看得懂	看不懂

Examples:

(A) Actual type:

1) 那些 wǎn 你洗乾淨了沒有？	Have you washed those dishes (bowls) clean?
2) 我把你給我的兩張畫兒都 gwà 上了.	I have hung up both of the pictures you gave me.
3) 今天買的 syāngjyāu 都吃完了.	The bananas bought today have all been eaten.

(B) Potential type:

1) 我給他的信明天他 shōu 得到 shōu 不到？	Will he be able to receive the letter I sent him tomorrow?
2) 這個門開不開怎麼辦？	This door can't be opened, what shall we do?
3) 沒有人看得起他.	Nobody looks up to (esteems) him.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Náju jèige wǎn. Byé sǎle tāng.

2) Wǒ nájule. Sǎbulyǎu.

3) Tāmende chē bǐ wǒmende yòu syīn yòu kwài. Wǒmen yídìng jwēibushàng tāmen.

4) Nèige gùshr tài cháng. Wǒ shwō yìtyān yě shwōbuwán.

5) Wáng Shàngsyàu méitīngjyan wǒmen shwōde hwà ,swóyi tā bùjrdàu.

6) Tāmen bùtīng wǒde hwà, kěshr yòu syǎngbuchulái gèng hǎude fádz.

7) Mǎ Syānsheng syěde shū hěn nándǔng. Wǒ kàngwo yìběn tāde shū, méikàndǔng.

8) Háidzmen dzài shùshang wár. Syǎu yìdyǎrde shàngbuchyù jyòu kūle.

9) Jèige wūdzde mén tài syǎu,gāngchín bānbujinchyù. Wǒ kàn bǎ gāngchín fàngdzai kètīng lǐtou ba.

10) Yǒu hěn dwōde dūngsyi dzài Měigwo mǎibujáu.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He does not go to the movies because he cannot afford it.

2) I have hung up all the pictures in your living room. Is there anything else I can do for you?

3) Did you smell her perfume?

4) Don't push him. Can't you see that he has three glasses of water in his hands?

5) Can you eat this watermelon all by yourself?

6) I cannot think of their names, can you?

7) Please come upstairs after you have finished brushing my topcoat.

8) You cannot cut the watermelon with such a small knife.

9) He has taken off his shoes and clothes and is now resting on his new sofa.

10) If this watch cannot be repaired, I will buy a new one.

11) The shirt cannot be washed clean no matter how much soap powder is used.

12) Can you finish reading this book tonight?

13) This door has not been opened for many years. It is probably difficult to open. Can you open it?

14) Have you finished washing my socks?

15) Don't look down on him. He used to be a rich man.

16) If we go to San Francisco in the morning, can we come back in the evening?

c. Answer the following questions orally:

1) Dzwótyan syǐde yīshang shàigānle ma?

2) Nǐ syǐwánle wǎn, shèngsya yìdzfěn le ma?

3) Tsúng nǐ jùde lóushang kàndejyan hǎi ma?

4) Nǐ syǎngdedàu tā lái ma?

5) Míngtyan dzǎushang sùngdedau ma?

6) Dzài Jūnggwo mǎidejáu Měigwo dūngsyi ma?

7) Nǐ nádelyǎu jèisye shū ma?

8) Nèige fànjwō nǐ yíge rén bānbushanglái ma?

9) Jèi bēi chá rèjíle. Nǐ hēdesyachyù ma?

10) Nǐ syǎngdechilái tāmende míngdz ma?

11) Nǐ chīdechǐ nèige fàngwǎr ma?

12) Nǐ jùdechǐ nèige lyǔgwǎn ma?

13) Syàndzài mǎidejáu pútau ma?

14) Nǐde lāsyītùng fàngdesyà jèisye búyàude dūngsyi ma?

15) Tā chīdelyǎu wǔge jyúdz ma?

16) Dzài chéng lǐtou mǎidejáu syīnsyan chīngtsài ma?

Homework

A. Story

Lǐ Shàuwèi jyēhwūn yǐhòu bùcháng chūlaile. Yǒu yìtyān jǐge lǎu péngyou dzài yíkwàr tánchi tā láile. Dàjyā syǎng dàu tā jyāli chyu kànkan tā. Nèityān shr Lǐbaityānde shàngwǔ. Wǒ ywánlái bùsyǎng gēn tāmen yíkwàr chyù, hòulai tāmen lái jǎu wǒ, yídìng yàu wǒ yě chyù. Swóyi wǒ yě gēn tāmen yíkwàr chyùle. Tāde tàitai kāide mén. Wǒmen wèn: "Lǐ Shàuwèi dzài jyā ma?" Tā tàitai shwō: "Dzài chúfángli, nǐmen dzài kètīng syān dzwò yìhwěr, wǒ chyù jyàu tā chūlai." Wǒmen shwō: "Búbì, búbì, wǒmen dàu chúfángli chyù kàn tā ba." Ywánlái tā dzài chúfángli syǐwǎn ne. Yīnwei yídzfěn yùngde tài dwōle, pénli dōu shr yídz, kànbujyàn wǎn. Lǐ Shàuwèide shǒushang, lyǎnshang, shàngyīshang dōu shr yídz. Tā méisyǎngdàu wǒmen chyu kàn tā. Tā jywéde yǒu yìdyǎr bùhauyìsz. Kěshr tā kànjyan wǒmen jēnshr gāusyìngjíle. Wǒ shwō: "Syǎu Lǐ, dzěmma jyēhwūn yǐhòu wǒmen kànbujyàn nǐ le?" Swéirán wǒmende jyēji dōu bǐ Syǎu Lǐ gāu, yīnwei wǒmen dōu shr lǎu péngyou, swóyi tā yě búbì tài kèchi. Tā shwō: "Nǐmen jèisye háidzmen jyēlehwūn yǐhòu jyòu jr̄daule." Wǒ shwō: "Shr̀ bushr yǒule tàitai jyòu búyàu péngyoule." Tā shwō: "Búshr, yǒule tàitai méiyou gūngfu gēn péngyou dzài yíkwàr le." Syàndzài wǒmen tsái jr̄dau tā wèishémma bùcháng chūlaile.

B. True or False statements: (mark T for TRUE and F for FALSE)

( ) 1) Syǎu Lǐde jyēji bǐ tāde péngyou dōu gāu.

( ) 2) Syǎu Lǐde tàitai búràng Syǎu Lǐ chūlai.

L. 57

(   ) 3) Wǒmen dàu Lǐjyāde shŕhou, Lǐ Tàitai jèng syǐwǎn.

(   ) 4) Lǐ Tàitai bùjr̄dau Syǎu Lǐ dzài nǎr.

(   ) 5) Dzài lǎu péngyou lǐtou,jyòushr Syǎu Lǐ jyēhwūnle.

(   ) 6) Syǎu Lǐ bùsyǐhwan péngyou dàu tā jyā.

(   ) 7) Wǒ ywánlái bùsyǎng gēn tāmen chyu.

(   ) 8) Syǎu Lǐ bǎ yídzfěn dōu sǎdzai dìshang le.

(   ) 9) Lǐ Tàitai búdzài jyā.

(   ) 10) Syǎu Lǐde lǎu péngyou dōu méijyēhwūn.

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.324-330)

324.	介	jyè	BF: 介紹	介紹	- introduce
325.	紹	shàu	BF: 介紹	介紹	- introduce
326.	清	chīng	BF: clear	清楚	- clear (in meaning)
327.	楚 (础)	chǔ	BF: 清楚	清楚	- clear (in meaning)
328.	公	gūng	BF: public	公共汽車	- public vehicle, bus
				公 ywán	- park
329.	共	gùng	BF: share, together collectively	公共汽車	- bus
330.	汽	chì	N: steam	汽車	- car,automobile

L. 57

汽車站 - bus stop or station

汽 yóu- gasoline

B. 句子

1. 對不起，我忘了給你們兩個人介紹介
   紹了.
2. 您貴姓？
3. 我姓 Lǐ，您貴姓？
4. 我姓王. 我們好 syàng 在甚麼地方見過
   shr 的.
5. 我 jì 不清楚了，也許是在高家吧？
6. 對了. 是在高清錢先生家裏.
7. 我也想起來了. 後來我們一塊兒坐公
   共汽車進城.
8. 是的. 您那次還 tì 我買 pyàu 了.
9. 秋天快到了，這條河慢慢兒的就乾了.
10. 自從日本打 bài 了以後，一九四六年春
    天我就離開日本了.
11. 冬天天黑的很早，夜裏睡八九個鐘頭，
    白天不必怎麼休息.
12. 夏天吃完了晚飯，我們常到公 ywán

L. 57
sànbù . 公 ywán 裏的 tsǎu 地很乾淨，有時候我們坐在 tsǎu 地上 tán 話.

C. Gù 事

在 Nyǒuywē 坐公共汽車得小心，因為要是坐錯了車，很 máfan. .

你要先看清楚了是第幾 hàu 兒的公共汽車；看清楚了以後再看是不是快車.

每天早上從七點鐘到九點多鐘，有幾萬人要到城裏去做事. 所以，有的公共汽車是快車，一直開到城裏頭去.

可是，還有很多人不是到城裏去的. 所以，有的公共汽車是慢車，過幾條街就 tíng 一次.

有一次，有一個人給我介紹了一個女朋友. 那個時候我住在一百二十五街. 那位小姐在第九街作事. 他很忙. 他說

他在上bān以前一刻鐘,可以跟我在作事的地方tán一tán. 他們每天九點鐘才上bān.

我平常從一百二十五街坐公共汽車, 最多用半小時就可以到第九街了.

在我去看這位小姐那天, 我八點就到了公共汽車站. 一會兒車來了, 我看見車上的人很多, 就上了車.

Ywán來我上了一個慢車, 在路上tíng了有幾十次, 每次車tíng了的時候, 都有人上車下車. 我到了那位小姐作事的地方的時候已經快十點了.

那位小姐說:「對不起, 明天再tán吧!」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 211-215)

茶 對 錯

句 更

B. Radicals

1. 艹 (grass, 140) as in: 茶
2. 寸 (inch, 41) as in: 對
3. 金 (metal, 167) as in: 錯
4. 口 (mouth, 30) as in: 句
5. 曰 (speak, 73) as in: 更

LESSON 58

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	要是我給你十五塊，又給你十三塊，一共給了你幾塊？你會算麼？	If I give you fifteen dollars and again give you thirteen dollars, how much will I have given you altogether? Can you add that up?
	B:	我想我會，可是請你等一等，我慢慢兒的算。	I think I can, but please wait for me to add that up slowly.
	A:	好，我等着你。	Fine. I will wait for you.
	B:	我看看我有多少錢。	I will see how much money I have.
	A:	要是你不看你的錢，你算得出來麼？	If you don't look at your money, can you figure it out?
	B:	要是我不看我的錢，我算不出來。	I can't figure it out if I don't look at my money.
	A:	為甚麼你不會算？	Why can't you figure it out?

	B:	因為我不太 tsūng 明.	Because I am not very intelligent.
	A:	一共應當是二十八塊.	The total should be twenty-eight dollars.
2.	A:	你 jyéhwūn 以後怎麼樣?	How have you been after marriage?
	B:	算是不錯吧.	Not bad, I think.
	A:	為甚麼就算不錯?	Why do you consider it only as "not bad"?
	B:	第一,我太太不算最好看,也不算最難看.	First, my wife is not considered the most beautiful nor the most homely.
	A:	第二呢?	How about the second reason?
	B:	第二,我太太不算最會作飯,也不算最不會作飯.	Second, my wife is not considered the best in cooking nor the worst in cooking.
	A:	第三呢?	How about the third reason?
	B:	也不算最愛用錢,也不算最不愛用錢.	She isn't considered the most lavish in using money nor the stingiest.

	A:	他上月用了多少?	How much did she use last month?
	B:	不算買 hwàjwāngpǐn 用了五百多.	She used more than five hundred dollars, not counting the cost of cosmetics.
3.	A:	我有一個笑話,想說給你們聽,好不好?	I have a joke which I would like to tell you. How about it?
	B:	算了吧. 你的笑話一點兒都不好.	Forget it. Your jokes are no good at all.
	A:	為甚麼你說我的笑話一點兒都不好?	Why do you say that my jokes are no good at all?
	B:	算了吧. 別說了. 你以前說的那幾個都不好.	Forget it. Let us not talk about it. Those few you told were all no good.
	A:	可是我這個真好.	But this one of mine is really good.

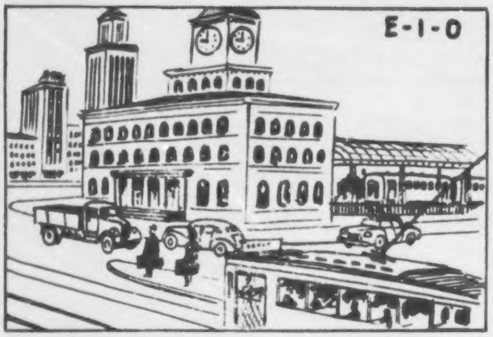
	B:	好,你說吧.	O.K. Go ahead and tell us.
	A:	有一個 bèn 孩子......	There was a stupid child.....
	B:	算了吧.別說了.我們聽過了.是不是那個 bèn 孩子作了很多 bèn 的事情?	Forget it. Don't go any further. We've heard it before. Is it about that stupid boy having done many foolish things?
	A:	要是你們聽過那個就算了吧.	Forget it if you have heard that one before.
4.	A:	明天我們到舊 jīn 山去玩兒,一共有幾個人?	How many will there be when we go to San Francisco for a trip?
	B:	算上你一共有五個人.	There will be five, counting you.
	A:	你算上老王了麼?	Have you included Old Wáng?
	B:	沒算上他.要是算上他一共有六個人.	No, I haven't. There will be six if we include him.
	A:	他的孩子呢?	How about his children?
	B:	也沒算上.他有幾個	They weren't included either. How many

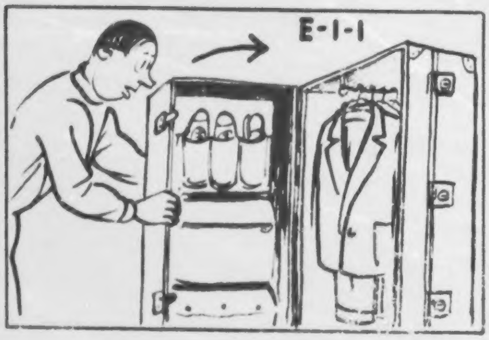
	孩子?	children does he have?
A:	兩個男孩子,一個女孩子.	Two boys and one girl.
B:	他們都去麼?	Are all of them going?
A:	都去.你也没把他們算在裏頭吧.	Yes, they are. You haven't counted them in, I suppose.
B:	對了.没把他們算在裏頭.要是算上他們一共九個人.	No, I haven't. There will be nine if we include them.
A:	所以我們得開三lyàng車去.	Therefore we will have to go in three cars.
B:	為甚麼?	Why?
A:	要不然坐不下.	Otherwise there will not be enough space for the people.
B:	我們一共有幾lyàng車?	How many cars do we have altogether?
A:	我算一算,老Lyóu有一lyàng,你有一lyàng,算上我的舊汽車,夠了.	Let me count. Old Lyóu has one, you have one, and counting my old car, we will have enough cars.

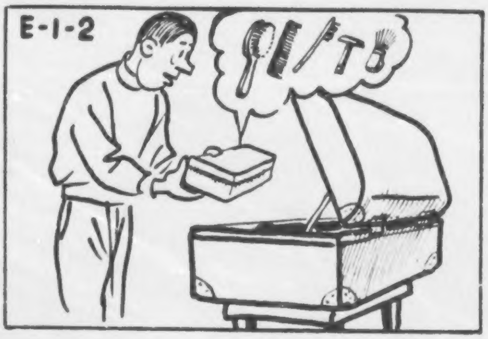
L. 58

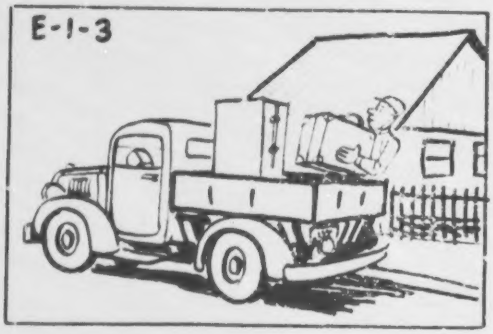
B:	好. 明天見.	Fine. I will be seeing you tomorrow.

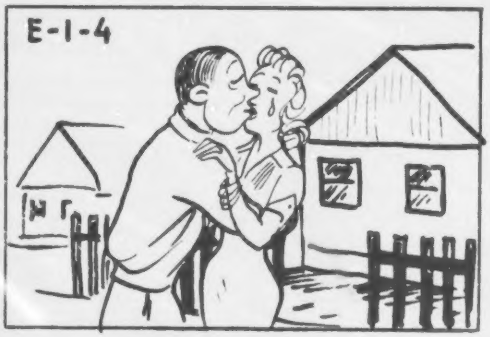
L. 58

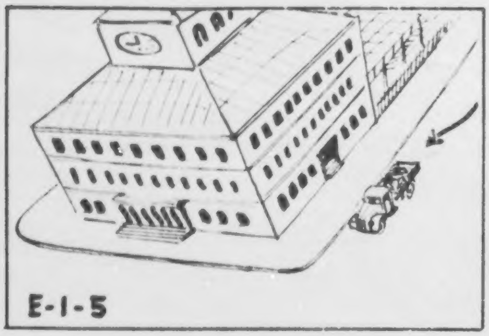


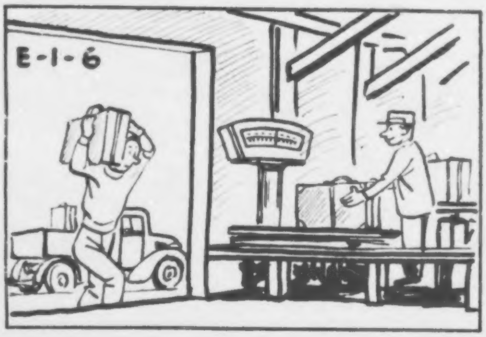




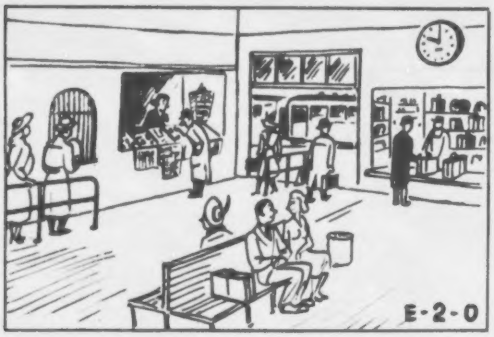


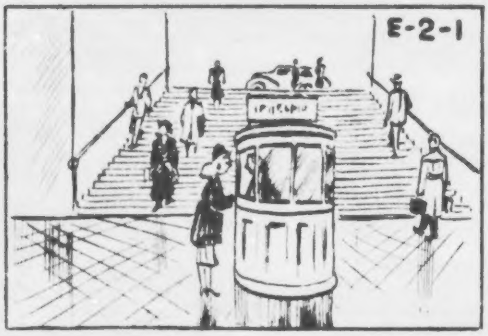


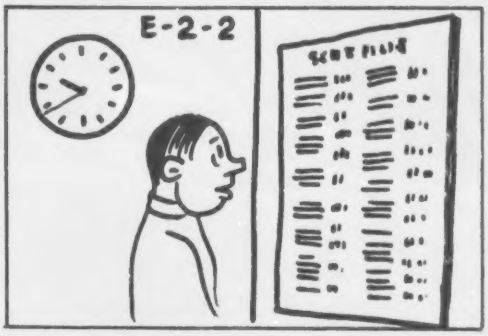


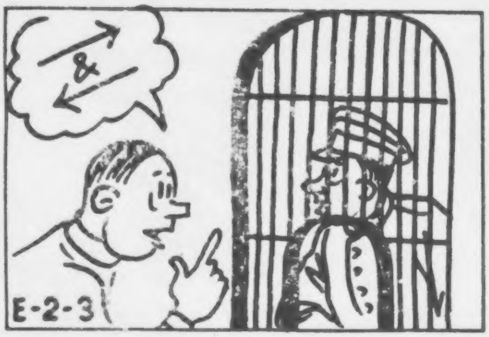


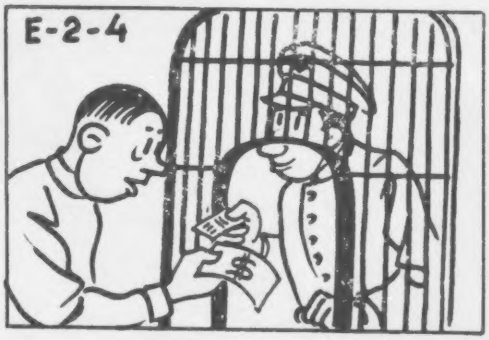
L. 58

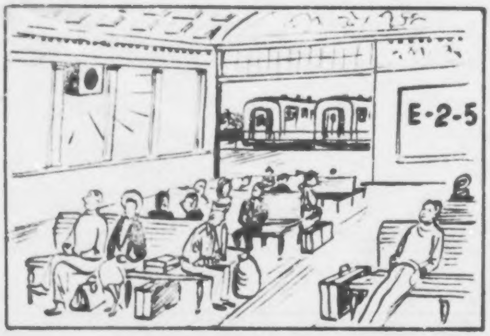


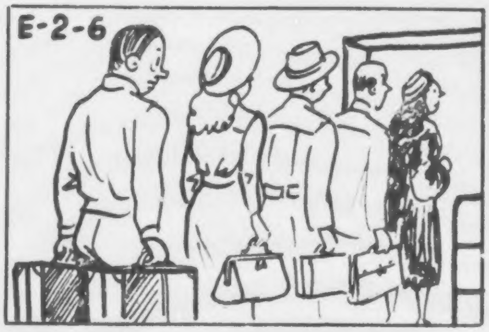


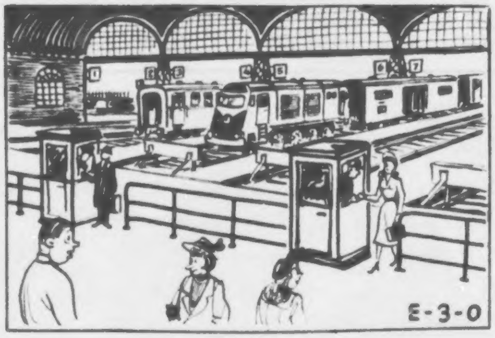


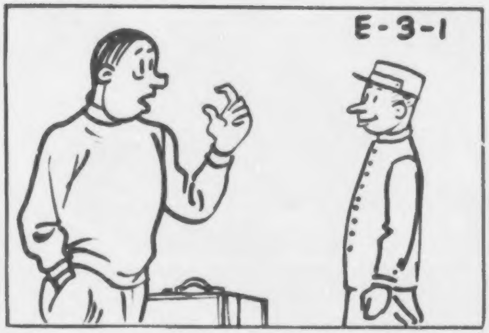


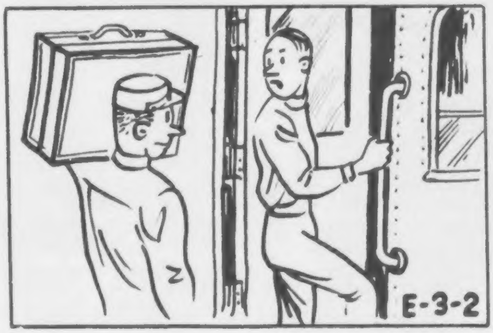


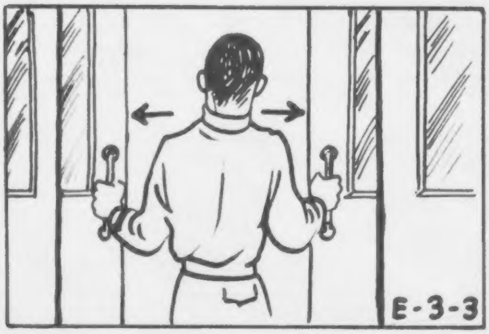


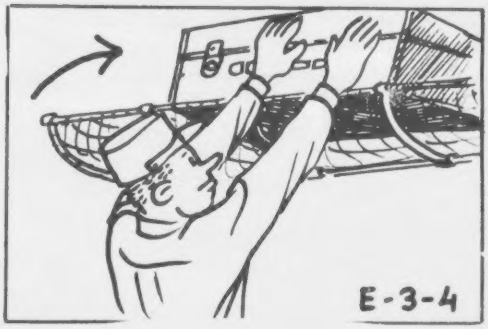


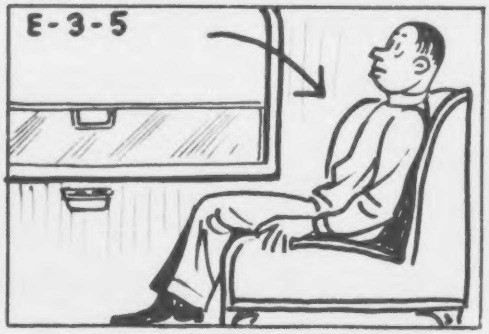

E-3-0

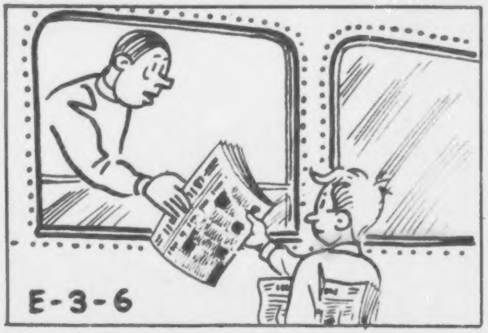

E-3-1


E-3-2


E-3-3


E-3-4


E-3-5


E-3-6

II. Basic Dialogue

Hwáng 先生 要到美國東 bù 去 lyǔ行. Hwáng 太太 不能跟他一塊兒去, 所以 Hwáng 先生 自己 shōushr 行 li:

1. 太太:	你給火車站打 dyàn話了麽?	Have you called the railway station?
先生:	打了. 他們一會兒就來拿行 li.	Yes, I have. They will come in a while to pick up my baggage.
太太:	你 yùbei 帶幾個 syāng 子去?	How many suitcases do you plan to take?
先生:	兩個. 一個放我的衣 shang 跟 syé, 還有一個放我的 yáshwā, bǎusyǎndāu, shwā 子, shū 子跟常用的東西. 可是我們的 yágāu 都用完了.	Two. One to put my clothes and shoes in and the other one to put my tooth brush, razor, brush, comb, and daily articles in. But our tooth paste is all gone.
太太:	沒有 yágāu 不行. 我現在去給你買吧.	You can't go without tooth paste. Let me go and buy some for you.

先生：算了吧，到了 Nyǒuywē 我自己去買.	You don't have to. I will buy some when I arrive in New York.
太太：外頭那lyàng dzàijùng車是不是從火車站來的？	Did that truck outside come from the railway station?
先生：不是.是我朋友幫我來bān行li的.現在我把行li拿出去,我也就走了..	No. It belongs to my friend who comes to help me. Now I will take the baggage out. I have to go soon too.
(Hwáng 先生跟他太太jyēwěn的時候，Hwáng 太太 kū 了.)	(When Mr. Hwáng kisses his wife, she breaks out in tears.)
先生：太太，你別kū. 過幾個月我就回來．我到了 Nyǒuywē 就給你打電話．	Don't cry, dear! I will be back in a few months. I will call you on the phone when I arrive in New York.
太太：好吧：你帶了多少錢？算一算够不够.	O.K. How much money do you have with you? See if you have enough.

先生: 我帶了五百塊錢. 我算了. 够了.	I have five hundred dollars with me. I figure it is enough.
(過了一會兒, Hwáng先生到了火車站, 他在 páng-門下了車, 對 jyǎu 行說:)	(After a little while Mr. Hwáng arrives at the railroad station. He gets off the car at the side entrance of the station and says to the porter:)
Hwáng先生: 你把我的行 li 拿到行 li 房去, 我一會兒就來.	Take my baggage to the baggage room. I will be there in a moment.
Jyǎu 行: 您得先買 pyàu.	You will have to buy a ticket first.
Hwáng先生: 在那兒買 pyàu, 多少錢?	Where do I buy the ticket? How much is it?
Jyǎu 行: 您看那兒就是問事 chù. 有一個女人站在那兒呢. 您可以問他.	You see, there is the Information Office. A lady is standing there. You can ask her.
Hwáng先生: 你叫甚麼名字?	What is your name?
Jyǎu 行: 我叫大 wèi. 是四十五 hàu. 您放心好了. 要是您想知道火車甚麼時候	My name is David. I am No. 45. Don't worry. If you want to know the time the train starts and the time it arrives, you

	開,甚麼時候到,您可以去看那個行車時jyān表.	can go and read that train schedule.
Hwáng先生:	好極了.我就去看那個行車時jyān表,不必去問問事chù了.	Fine. I will go and read that train schedule. I don't need to inquire at the Information Office.
Jyǎu 行:	要不然,您可以去問那個賣pyàu的,他可以告訴您.	You can also go and ask that ticket man. He can tell you.
Hwáng先生:	那麼,我先去買pyàu.	In that case, I will go and buy a ticket first.
	(Hwáng先生問賣pyàu的:)	(Mr. Hwáng asks the ticket man.)
Hwáng先生:	到Nyǒuywē去的火車,甚麼時候開,甚麼時候到,pyàu多少錢?	When will the train leave for New York? When will it arrive and how much is the ticket?
賣pyàu的:	今天下午五點鐘開,後天	It leaves at five

上午八點鐘到. Dānchéngpyàu 三十三塊錢,來回pyàu 五十九塊四.	o'clock this afternoon and arrives at eight o'clock day after tomorrow in the morning. Thirty-three dollars for the one-way ticket and fifty-nine dollars forty cents for the round-trip ticket.
Hwáng先生: 我要一張來回pyàu. 我給你六十塊. 請找給我六毛錢.	I want a round trip ticket. I am giving you sixty dollars, please give me sixty cents change.
賣pyàu的: 先生,這是您的pyàu. 這是找給您的六毛錢.	Sir, this is your ticket and here is sixty cents change for you.
Hwáng先生: 甚麼時候可以上車?	When can I board the train?
賣pyàu的: 請您在候車shr̀等一等. 四點三刻的時候您就到那兒去站dwèi.	Please wait in the waiting room. At quarter to five you can go over there to stand in line.
Hwáng先生: 今天去Nyǒuywē的人很	Are there many people

多麼?	going to New York today?
賣pyàu 的: 不算多. 算上您有五位, 要是不算您就有四位.	There aren't many. There are five including you. Not including you there are only four.

190

Vocabulary

102.	bǎusyǎndāu	保險刀	N:	safety razor
102.1	bǎusyǎn	保險	SV/VO:	safe/buy insurance; guarantee
103.	dǎ dyànhwà	打電話	VO:	make a telephone call
103.1	dyànhwà	電話	N:	telephone
104.	dānchéngpyàu	單程票	N:	one-way ticket
104.1	pyàu	票	N:	ticket, slip
105.	hàu(r)	號(兒)	N/M:	the number (of house, room, etc.)
106.	hòuchēshr̀	候車室	N:	waiting room (in bus depot, etc.)
107.	jàn dwèi	站隊	VO:	line up, stand in line
108.	jǎu(chyán)	找(錢)	V(O):	make change (repay the balance)
109.	jyǎuháng	脚行	N:	porter (baggage)
110.	jyēwěn	接吻	VO:	kiss
111.	láihwéipyàu	來回票	N:	round trip ticket
112.	lyǔsyíng	旅行	V/N:	travel/traveling
113.	pángmén	旁門	N:	side door
114.	swàn	算	V:	reckon, calculate, count
114.1	swànle ba!	算了吧	IE:	forget it, let the matter drop, call it quits
115.	syāngdz	箱子	N:	case, trunk, box
116.	syíngchē-shŕjyānbyǎu	行車時間表	N:	train or bus schedules
116.1	shŕjyānbyǎu	時間表	N:	time table
117.	syíngli	行李	N:	baggage
117.1	syínglifáng	行李房	N:	baggage room
118.	wènshr̀chù	問事處	N:	information office, stand or desk
119.	yágāu	牙膏	N:	toothpaste

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. Various uses of swàn

Swàn has several uses with various meanings:

1.1 To calculate

swàn	calculate, figure out
swànchulai	calculate, figure out
swànhǎule	finished calculating
Yígùng dwōshau chyán, chǐng nǐ swànyiswan.	Please figure out how much money altogether.
Yùng jèige fádz swànyiswan jyòu kéyi swànchulaile.	With this method you can figure it out right away.

1.2 To include

swànshang	count in, include
swàndzai yikwàr	count in, include
swàndzai lǐtou	count in, include
Nǐmen chyù chīfàn, byé wàngle bǎ wǒ swànshang.	When you go out to eat, don't forget to count me in.
Swànshang jīntyan yùngde chyán, yígung tsái bāshrwǔkwài.	Altogether only $85.00, including the money spent today.

1.3 Be considered

swàn(shr)	be considered as
Jèige sùdù búswàn tài kwài.	This speed is not considered too fast.
Wǒ kàn Jāng Syáujye búswàn tài pàng. Hěn hǎukàn.	Miss Jāng is not considered too fat, as I see it. She is very pretty.

1.4 Forget it!

swànle ba!	forget it!
Yàushr tā bùkěn, jyòu swànle ba!	If he isn't willing to do it, let the matter drop.

L. 58

Swànle ba! Tā bìngle, bùnéng chyùle.	Let's drop the matter. He is sick, so he can't go.

Translate the following:

1) That idea of yours is fine, but first do a little figuring as to how much money it is going to take.

2) If we count you in too, there will be thirty-one persons.

3) I haven't finished figuring. When I have, I'll tell you.

4) If this teacup is not yours, let it be considered mine.

5) If you are too busy, let's drop the matter.

6) This dining table isn't considered too expensive, because it is new and big.

7) It cost us three dollars each for the meal, not counting the wine we drank.

8) This kind of weapon is not considered the most powerful now.

IV. Pattern Drill

Various uses of swàn

A. Swàn meaning "to calculate"

請你算算三張 dān-chéngpyàu 一共多少錢?	Please figure out how much three one-way tickets will be altogether.

Examples:

1)	我把錢算好了.一張 pyàu 二毛五,十張兩塊五.	I've figured out the amount of money already. Each ticket is 25 cents. Ten of them will be $2.50.
2)	一件行li 四毛五,你算得出來算不出來,五件行li 是多少錢?	Each piece of baggage is 45 cents. Can you figure out (or not) how much it is for five pieces?
3)	Jyǎu 行把錢算錯了.	The porter has figured the costs wrong.
4)	Fēijīchǎng 上那個賣 pyàu-的算錢算得快極了.	The ticket-seller at the airfield can figure out costs extremely fast.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Dǎ dyànhwà dàu Nyǒuywē chyu, shwō lyòufēn jūngde hwà, nǐ swàndechulai swànbuchulai děi dwōshau chyán?

2) Kàn syīngchēshŕjyānbyǎu nǐ swàndechulai dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù dzǒu jǐge jūngtǒu ma?

3) Chǐng swànswan wǒmen shàngwǔ syōusyi dwōshaufēn jūng.

4) Yìjang láihwéipyàu bǐ lyǎngjāng dānchéngpyàu pyányi wǔmáu chyán. Yìbǎi jāng pyányi dwōshau? Nǐ swànhǎule ma?

5) Yàushr yíge rén swàn chyán swànde hěn màn, nèmma jǎu chyán yě yídìng jǎude hěn màn ma?

6) Cháng bǎ chyán swàntswòlede rén néng bùneng dzài yínháng dzwòshr̀?

B. Swàn meaning "to include"

這個屋子算上先生一共有十個人.	Including the teacher, there is a total of ten persons in this room.

Examples:

1) 算上我這件行li 房裏就有七件行li.	Including this piece of mine, the baggage room has only seven pieces of baggage in all.
2) 不算上 這個筆,你今年一共用了幾個筆了?	Not including this, how many pens have you used already this year?
3) 把你這兒的 syāng 子也算在裏頭,你有幾個 syāng 子?	(If) we include this suitcase here with the others, how many do you have?
4) 把汽車 bǎusyǎn, 房子 bǎusyǎn 算在一塊兒我每年得 bǎusyǎn 一百多塊.	Including car and house insurance, I have to spend over 100 dollars for insurance each year.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Búswàn(shang) nǐ, ni jyāli yígùng yǒu jǐge rén?

2) Bǎ nǐ wǔnyán lyǔsyíng yùngde chǐyóu swàndzai yíkwàr, nǐ yùngle dwōshau chyánde chǐyóu?

3) Bǎ chyánmén, hòumén, pángmén swàndzai yíkwàr, jèige lóu yǒu jǐge mén?

4) Bǎ wǒmen sywésyàude dyànyǐngywàn swàndzai lǐtou, jèige chéng yígùng yǒu jǐge dyànyǐngywàn?

5) Yàushr péngyou chyù lyǔsyíng, wàngle bǎ nǐ swànshangle, nǐ shēngchǐ ma?

6) Búswàn(shang) nǐ syàndzài chwānjede jèishwāng, nǐ yígùng yǒu jǐshwāng syé?

C. Swàn meaning "to be considered"

在法國,在街上 jyēwěn 不算甚麼.	It is not considered anything (special) to kiss on the street in France.

Examples:

1) 這個 bǎusyǎndāu 算是最新的.	This safety razor is considered the newest.
2) 這兒的 dyànyǐngywàn, 賣pyàu 的找錢算不算快?	Are the ticket-sellers at the movies here considered fast in making change?
3) 火車站的候車 shr̀ 算不算很大?	Is the waiting room at the railway station considered large?

4) 這個yágāu算是最好的.	This toothpaste is considered the best.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Dzài nǐmen jǐge rén dāngjūng, tāde dyànhwà swàn buswan dwō?

2) Sywésyàulǐde dyànhwàhàur swàn buswan nánjì(de)?

3) Sywésyàulǐ dyànyǐngywàn jàndwèi mǎi pyàude rén swàn buswan dwō?

4) Nǐde chìchē bǎusyǎn búswan tài gwèi ba.

5) Jèige lóude jyànjù swànshr dzwèi syīnde ma?

6) Sywésyàu wènshrchùde rén dzwòshr swàn buswan hǎu?

D. Swàn used in the idiomatic expression,meaning "forget it"

我的女朋友說:"你lyán我的dyàn話hàu兒都忘了! 算了吧!"	My girl friend said, "You've even forgotten my phone number. Let's call it quits."

Examples:

1) Lyán 問事chù都不知道, 那就算了吧 !	If even the information desk doesn't know, let's forget it.
2) 賣花兒的對我說:"我的錢不夠找給您的." 我說:"算了吧 !"	The florist said to me, "I do not have sufficient change to give you." I said, "Forget it."

3) 賣pyàu的說:"先生別走，我得找給你錢."我說:"一分錢算了吧!"

The ticket-seller said, "Don't leave, sir. I've got to give you change." I said, "It's only a penny, forget it."

4) 你要是不願意給我打dyàn話就算了吧!

If you don't like to phone me, then forget it.

Exercise:

Render the following sentences into Chinese orally:

1) If you can't participate in our trip, let's drop the matter!

2) You mean she didn't let you kiss her? You had better forget it!

3) If he doesn't want to line up to buy the tickets, let's forget it.

4) Let's drop the matter. Since you have forgotten her telephone number, we have no way of telling her.

5) If you can't give me the change, forget it.

6) Let's forget it. He is only a porter, not your friend. Don't get mad at him.

Homework

A. Read the following story out aloud several times:

Yǒu yíge syāngsyarén dìyītsz̀ dzwò hwǒchē. Tā tsúng Běipíng dàu Nánjīng chyù. Shàngle hwǒchē tā tsái syángchilai tāde syíngli hái dzài hwǒchējànde hòuchēshr̀ ne. Tā yàu lìkè hwéichyu ná syíngli. Hwǒchēshang màipyàude shwō: "Wǒmen kéyi dǎ dyànhwà, jyàu rén bǎ nǐde syāngdz sùngdau Nánjīng chyù. Dyànhwà bǐ hwǒchē kwàide dwō." Syāngsyarén shwō: "Nèmma, syàtsz̀ lyǔsyíng wǒ dzwò dyànhwà, búdzwò hwǒchē le."

B. According to the contents of the above story, answer the following questions orally without referring to the text.

1) Syāngsyarén tsúngchyán dzwògwo hwǒchē méiyou?

2) Syāngsyarén yàu dàu nǎr chyù?

3) Syāngsyarén bǎ syíngli fàngdzai nǎr le?

4) Syāngsyarén syángchilai tā wàngle dài syíngli, tā yàu dzěmma bàn?

5) Hwǒchēshang màipyàude ywànyi dzěmma bāng tāde máng?

6) Syāngsyarén tīngle hwǒchēshang màipyàude shwōde hwà yǐhòu, tā shwō shémma?

7) Syāngsyarén dǎgwo méidǎgwo dyànhwà?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.331-338)

331.	預	yù	BF: pre-	預備	- prepare
332.	備 (备)	bèi	BF: to prepare	預備	- prepare
333.	希	syī	BF: to hope	希望	- hope that, hope for, hope
334.	望	wàng	BF: to hope	希望	- hope that, hope for; hope
335.	風 风	fēng	N: wind	風景	- scenery
336.	景	jǐng	BF: a view	風景	- scenery

L. 58

337.	冷	lěng	SV: cold	冬天冷 - cold in winter
338.	熱 热	rè	SV: hot	夏天熱 - hot in summer

B. 句子

1. 你天天晚上預備書嗎？

2. 禮拜天到禮拜五，每天晚上預備三個鐘頭，禮拜六休息．

3. 你希望到中國去嗎？

4. 我很希望去．因為我不是 jyūngwān ，我的希望很小．

5. 中國的風景很美嗎？

6. 中國南方的風景美極了．北方也不錯．

7. 聽說北方很冷，南方很熱．

8. 我看不清楚，您打 dyàn 話去問問事chù 吧．

9. 請您看這些行車時 jyān 表，算一算幾 hàu 可以到 Nyǒuywē. ．

10. 你別給我介紹了，算了吧．聽說那位小姐每年都要 lyǔ 行一次，我可去不起．

11. 一張來回 pyàu 六塊，給了 jyǎu 行四毛，

行lĭ 兩毛一件，一共才用了七塊，不算貴，

12. 中午我在大世界飯gwǎn兒吃了七毛四分錢的飯，怎麽他們沒找錢給我？

C. Gù事

美國東北bù有錢的人都有兩個家，一個在美國的東北bù，一個在美國的東南bù。

東北bù的家是預備夏天住的，東南bù的家是預備冬天住的。

因為冬天的時候，美國的東北bù很冷，所以那些有錢的人，都到東南bù去。可是夏天的時候，住在東北bù很shūfu，所以他們又回到東北去。

他們住的地方，風景都很好看。有的在hǎi邊兒上，有的在山上頭。並且ywàn

子裏春夏秋冬都有花兒．

有的時候那些有錢的人，還到外國去玩兒一兩個月．也許是坐自己的 fēijr 去，坐船回來；也許是坐船去，坐自己的 fēijr 回來．

我不希望那麼有錢，就希望到老了的時候，自己有一個小房子，ywàn 子不必大，有一點兒花兒，一塊 tsǎu 地就行了．

風景好不好，有沒有汽車，都不太要緊．冬天冷的時候，我在屋裡看書看報；夏天熱的時候，我在 ywàn 子裡 jùngjung 花兒 twēitwei tsǎu ．要出門的時候，我可以坐公共汽車．

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 216-220)

容 易 難

住 家

B. Radicals

1. 宀 (roof, 40) as in: 容, 家
2. 日 (sun, 72) as in: 易
3. 隹 (bird, 172) as in: 難
4. 亻 (man, 9) as in: 住

C. Dictionary Drill

Sixty Common Chinese Radicals - Miscellaneous" Group (continued)

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Examples
149	yén	言 言	Word	話 說 警 變
154	pèi	貝 貝	Cowries	費 貴 買 賬
159	ch'ē	車 車	Vehicle	輕 輪 軍 轡
163	yù-ěrh-tāo-erh	阝 邑	Village	那 部 都
181	yè	頁 頁	A page	頂 頭 願

1. Exercise: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
貞			頂		
頸			貽		
討			郊		
軟			貪		
頗			診		
販			郎		
邦			轇		
轎			顧		
贖			誓		
郵			輦		
鄙			頓		

L. 58

2. Home Work: Find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
竅			譬		
戚			輩		
圜			順		
詔			題		
責			讀		
軌			鄉		
郡			夭		
鄧			彌		
賒			財		
輿			團		
願			顏		

LESSON 59

I. Military Subject

LǏ 上士跟王上士跟着他們的 jyūntwán 長 tsāngwān 了很多 Ōujou 打 jàng 的地方，也看了很多 Dé 國 jyūndwèi 的 dyànyǐng 兒。有一天他們 tán 到 Dé 國 jyūndwèi 的 syùnlyàn.

LǏ:	Swéi 然 Dé 國 bèi 打 bài 了，可是我還覺得他們 lùjyūn 的 syùnlyàn 很有意思.	Although Germany was defeated, I still think the training of her army is very interesting.
王:	我 jì 不清楚了. Dé 國新 bīng 應 jēng rùwǔ 以後 shòu 多少天的 jī 本 syùnlyàn?	I don't remember clearly. How many days of basic training did German soldiers have after induction?
LǏ:	大 gài 是三個月；是從他們報到那天起就 shòu syùnlyàn.	Approximately three months, starting from the day they report at the camp.
王:	Dé 國新 bīng 也有應 mù rùwǔ 的麼?	Were there any German soldiers who enlisted (voluntarily)?

LǏ:	有,可是很少.	Yes, but very few.
王:	他們的 jī 本 syùnlyàn 跟我們的差不多,是不是?	Their basic training is similar to ours, isn't it?
LǏ:	差不多,可是他們的yíng-chyū比我們的大多了. 他們的yíng房很好, 很jù意 bǎuyǎng jyǎnchá, 也很jù意jyùnjì跟jyūn人jīngshén.	Yes, it is. But their camps are much larger than ours, and their barracks are very good. They place great emphasis on maintenance and inspection, and believe in the importance of discipline and military spirit.
王:	你還jì得他們的jī本syùnlyàn都有甚麼麼?	Do you still remember what was included in their basic training?
LǏ:	在那個dyànyǐng兒裏頭, 我們看見他們早上晚上都點名.	We saw in the movie that they had roll calls in the morning and in the evening.
王:	我就jì得他們早上點名,我忘了晚上他們點名不點名了.	I only remember that they had roll calls in the morning. I forget whether they had them in the eveing or not.

LǏ:	點名. 他們新 bīng gāng 報到, lì 正跟 shāu 息都作的不太好.	Yes, they did. When their trainees first reported to camp, they couldn't execute "attention" and "at ease" too well.
王:	可是 syùnlyàn 了幾天, 他們的 lì 正都作的不錯了.	However, after a few days of training, they didn't do badly in executing "attention".
LǏ:	Shāu 息學的最快, 一天就都學的不錯了.	"At ease" was learned in the shortest time. They learned it well in only one day.
王:	因為誰都喜歡 shāu 息, 不喜歡 lì 正.	This is because everybody likes "at ease" but not "attention".
LǏ:	對了. Lì 正太 lèi.	Right. "Attention" is too strenuous.
王:	好 syàng 他們的 chíbù 走也作的很好.	It seems they also did quick time march very well.
LǏ:	對了. 他們也學怎麼	Right. They also learned to use

210

	用手chyāng, bùchyāng, chūngfēngchyāng.	pistols, rifles and submachine guns.
王:	我們 中國 bùbīng 也是 一樣, rùwǔ 以後 要 shòu 不少 syùnlyàn.	As with our Chinese soldiers, they have to receive a lot of training after enlistment.
LĬ:	我們 還沒看 Dé 國 jyūn-dwèi 別的 syùnlyàn 的 dyànyǐng 兒呢.	We haven't seen any movie other than the basic training of the German army.
王:	那個 bùbīng 打 jàn 車的 dyànyǐng 兒 不是 jī 本 syùnlyàn的 dyànyǐng 兒.	That movie on "Men Against Tanks" is not a movie on their basic training.
LĬ:	對了. Pàubīng 的 syùnlyàn 我們 還沒看過 吧?	You are right. We haven't seen any on the training of their artillery, have we?
王:	沒呢. 可是 我們 看過 工 bīng 的 syùnlyàn 了.	No, we haven't. But we have seen one on the training of their engineers.
LĬ:	是不是 Dé 國 工bīng dā jōuchyáu 那個 dyànyǐng 兒?	Was it the movie on the building of a ponton bridge by the German engineers?

王：	對了. 看他們 dā jōuchyáu 很容易 shr 的.	That's right. It seemed very easy the way they built the ponton bridge.
LĬ:	因為他們把 dā chyáu 的東西都預備好了, 所以 dā 起來就很容易了.	Since theyhad all the bridge building equipment ready, it would be very easy to put the bridge together.
王：	聽說還有一個禮拜我們就要走了. 您想我們的 jyūntwán 長要辦點兒甚麼事 ?	I heard that we would be going in a week. Is there anything that you think our generals will want to do?
LĬ:	我們 jyūntwán 長一定跟他們要點兒 Dé 國 syùnlyàn dyànyĭng 兒.	Our generals will certainly ask them for some German training films.
王:	我也那麼想. 我們應當要甚麼 dyànyĭng 兒 ?	I think so too. What films should we request?
LĬ:	Jĭ 本 syùnlyàn 的 dyànyĭng 兒我們不一定要, 因為中國 jyūndwèi shòu 的 jĭ 本 syùnlyàn 都很好.	We won't necessarily want any basic training films because the basic training for the Chinese army is very good.

	我想他們也許要點兒作 jàn 的 dyànyǐng 兒.	I am hoping that they would request some films on military operations.
王:	他們 kěn 給我們麼?我想作 jàn 的 dyànyǐng 兒都是 jyūn 事 mìmì.	Are they willing to give these to us? I think that all films on military operations were military secrets.
LǏ:	我想沒甚麼.那些 dyànyǐng 兒都是 Dé 國的,不是美國的.要是有 yíng 房, yīywàn, tsāngkù, 汽車 jí 用 chǎng 的 dyànyǐng 兒我們也可以要一點.	I don't think so. Those are German films, not American films. If there are movies on the operation of barracks, hospitals, depots and motor pools, we could also ask to have some.
王:	好.我明天就報告我們 jyūntwán 長.	Fine. We will suggest this to our generals tomorrow.

II. Interpretation Exercise

有一天 LĬ 上士跟美國 lùjyūn Sž 上士 tán 到美國 bùbīng syùnlyàn 的事情. 有人給他們 fānyì.

LĬ:	現在美國 lùjyūn 算是世界第一了, 所以我想問問您美國 lùjyūn syùnlyàn 的事情.	At present the American Army is considered the best in the world; so I would like to ask you something about training in the American Army.
Sž:	您太客氣. 美國 lùjyūn dàu 是不錯, 可是中國的 lùjyūn 也很好.	You are too polite. The American Army is not bad, but the Chinese Army is also very good.
LĬ:	Swéi 然我想知道一點兒你們美國 lùjyūn syùnlyàn 的事情, 要是那是你們的 jyūn 事 mìmì, 就不必告訴我.	Although I am interested in knowing something about training in the American Army, you need not tell me if it is a military secret of yours.
Sž:	請您問吧.	Please go ahead.
LĬ:	你們美國 lùjyūn shòu 多少個禮拜的 jī 本 syùnlyàn?	How many weeks of basic training do American soldiers take?

L. 59

Sž:	新bīng 報到以後 shòu 八個禮拜的 jī本 syùnlyàn.	Trainees, after reporting to camp, go through eight weeks of basic training.
Lǐ:	都 syùnlyàn 甚麼?	What is included in this training?
Sž:	先 syùnlyàn 他們 lì 正, shāu 息, chíbù 走.	First they are given training in "attention", "at ease", and "quick time march."
Lǐ:	Syùnlyàn 的時候天天點名麼?	Is there a roll call every day during the training?
Sž:	差不多天天點名. 有的時候禮拜六不點名.	Yes, there is a roll call almost every day. Sometimes there is no roll call on Saturday.
Lǐ:	Shòu 完 jī本 syùnlyàn 以後他們 shòu 甚麼 syùnlyàn?	What kind of training will they have after they have gone through basic training?
Sž:	他們就 shòu 別的 syùnlyàn.	Then they will receive other types of training.
Lǐ:	你們有多少樣別的 syùnlyàn?	How many other types of training do you have?
Sž:	我也不知道有多少樣,	I don't know how many kinds there

	可是我知道有很多.	are either, but I do know there are very many.
LǏ:	那樣的 syùnlyàn 要多少天?	How many days are required for those other types of training?
Sz̄:	有的長,有的短.	Some are long, and some are short.
LǏ:	你們 bùbīng 都有甚麼 wǔchì?	What weapons do your infantry men have?
Sz̄:	有手 chyāng, bùchyāng, chūngfengchyāng, 火 jyàntǔng 跟 jī 關 chyāng.	They have pistols, rifles, submachine guns, rocket launchers, and machine guns.
LǏ:	都有甚麼 jī 關 chyāng?	What kinds of machine guns do you have?
Sz̄:	Chīngjīchyāng, jùngjīchyāng都有.	Both the light and the heavy types.
LǏ:	你們一pái 裏頭有多少 chīngjīchyāng?	How many light machine guns are there in your platoon?
Sz̄:	三 tǐng.	Three.
LǏ:	你們 bùchyāngpái 裏頭有多少 jùngjīchyāng?	How many heavy machine guns are there in your rifle platoon?

L. 59

Sz̄:	現在 bùchyāngpái 沒有 jùngjīchyāng.	Nowadays there is no heavy machine gun in a rifle platoon.
LǏ:	你們 現在 有多少 yíngchyū?	How many camps do you have now?
Sz̄:	我知道的 有 三十多個,可是 還 有我 不知道的.	There are more than thirty that I know of, but there are those that I do not know about.
LǏ:	你們 最大的 yíngchyū 在 那兒 ?	Where is your largest camp?
Sz̄:	我想 美國 南bù 有一個 很 大的,不知道是 不是 最 大的.	I think there is a very large camp in the southern part of America, but I don't know if it is the largest.
LǏ:	那個 yíngchyū 能 jù 多少 bīng?	How many soldiers can be stationed in that camp?
Sz̄:	我 在 那兒的 時候,能 jù 三萬多.聽說 這 幾年 又 有了 幾個 新yíngchyū, bīng 一定 比 以前 多了.	More than thirty thousand troops could be stationed there when I was there. I heard that these few years some new barracks have been added; therefore there should be more troops stationed there than before.

LĬ:	你們新bīng 在yĭngchyū 裏的時候都覺得很有意思麼？	When your trainees are stationed in camp, do they feel that they are having fun?
SZ̆:	Shòu jī 本syùnlyàn 誰都覺得很 lèi, 可是我們想法子ràng 他們覺得有意思.	Everybody feels that he is tired during basic training, but we find ways to make them feel interested.
LĬ:	你們yĭngchyū 都有些甚麼？	What do you have in your camp?
SZ̆:	我們yĭngchyū 裏頭有yĭng-房, yīywàn, tsāngkù. 汽車jí用chăng跟別的地方.	We have barracks, hospitals, depots, motor pools, and other places.
LĬ:	Bīng 看dyànyĭng 兒要用錢麼？	Do soldiers have to pay for the movies?
SZ̆:	就用兩毛五分錢, 比外頭便yi 多了.	They pay only twenty-five cents, much less than they pay outside.

L. 59

LY:	我聽您這麼一說.我真想到你們那兒去看看.	After hearing what you have just said, I really want to go to your country to pay a visit.
SZ:	好極了. 我希望您從這兒就到美國去.	That would be wonderful. I hope that you will go to America from here.
LY:	我也那麼想.	I hope so too.
SZ:	要是您去,我給您介紹幾位朋友.	If you go, I will introduce you to a few friends.
LY:	好.謝謝您.	Fine, thank you.

120.	bǎuyǎng	保養	V/N:	keep maintenance/ maintenance
121.	bàudàu	報到	V:	report for duty
121.1	bàugàu	報告	V/N:	report
122.	chíbùdzǒu	齊步走	V/N:	quick time march
123.	chìchē jíyùngchǎng	汽車集用場	N:	motor pool
124.	chūngfēngchyāng	衝鋒槍	N:	submachine gun
124.1	chūngfēng	衝鋒	V/N:	charge, assault
125.	dyǎnmíng	點名	VO:	rollcall
126.	jīběn syùnlyàn	基本訓練	N:	basic training
126.1	syùnlyàn	訓練	V/N:	train/training
127.	jīngshén	精神	N:	spirit
128.	jùyì	注意	VO:	pay attention to
129.	jyǎnchá	檢查	V/N:	inspect/inspection
130.	jyūnjì	軍紀	N:	discipline (military)
131.	jyūnrén	軍人	N:	soldier, military man
132.	lìjèng	立正	V/N:	attention (military)
133.	rùwǔ	入伍	VO:	enlist
133.1	yìngmù	應募	VO:	enlist (voluntarily)
133.2	yìngjēng	應徵	VO:	report for draft
134.	shāusyī	稍息	V/N:	at ease (military)
135.	shòusyùn	受訓	VO:	receive training
135.1	shòu	受	V:	receive (training, punishment, reward, etc.), undergo
136.	syīnbīng	新兵	N:	recruit
137.	tsāngkù	倉庫	N:	depot
138.	tsúng....chǐ	從…起	CV.....V:	start from
139.	yíngchyū	營區	N:	fort, post, camp (permanent)
140.	yíngfáng	營房	N:	barracks

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. The difference in meaning for dzài, tsái, and jyòu :

All these three fixed adverbs: dzài, tsái, and jyòu are used in a similar sentence construction. That is, they are used before the second verb in a sentence with two verbs. These fixed adverbs show the sequence of the actions of the two verbs; the second action follows the first action and not before it. However, there is a difference in meaning among the three.

Wǒmen chr̄wánle fàn dzài chyù ba.	Let's finish eating before we go.
Wǒmen chr̄wánle fàn tsái chyù ne.	We won't go until we have finished eating.
Wǒmen chr̄wánle fàn jyòu chyù.	We will go right after we have finished eating.

2. Dzài and tsái compared

2.1 Tsái can be used in both contemplated and completed actions, while dzài can be used only in a contemplated action, and not in the completed action.

2.11 contemplated action

Wǒmen děng míngtyan dzài chyù ba.	Let's wait till tomorrow before we go.
Tā láile wǒmen tsái dzǒu ne.	We won't go until he comes.

2.12 completed action

Wǒ dzwótyan hwéile jyā, tsái kànjyan tā de.	I didn't see him until I came home yesterday.

2.2 When they are used in the contemplated action, dzài often takes the ba suffix to mean suggestion or request, but tsái usually takes the ne suffix and the sentence is a statement.

Děng tā hwéilai wǒmen dzài gàusung tā ba.	Let's tell him after he has returned.
Děng tā hwéilai wǒmen tsái gàusung tā ne.	We won't tell him until he has returned.

3. Tsái and jyòu compared

3.1 Jyòu is used to mean that the second action immediately follows the first action, while tsái does not show immediate sequence.

Wŏmen chr̄wánle fàn jyòu dzŏu.	We will go immediately after we have finished eating.
Wŏmen chr̄wánle fàn tsái dzŏu ne.	We will not go before we have finished eating.

3.2 When they are used in a sentence with a preceding time expression, jyòu means "sooner than expected" and tsái means "later than expected".

Tā yí dau lyòudyăn jūng jyòu láile.	He came as soon as it was six o'clock.
Tā gwòle lyòudyăn jūng tsái láide.	He didn't come until after six o'clock.

Translate the following:

1) After we have had our basic training, we will have our special training.

2) Right after we have reported to camp, we will start basic training.

3) There won't be a roll call until we have had our breakfast.

4) After Mr. Wáng and Mrs. Wáng kissed, Mr. Wáng boarded the train.

5) After I arrive at New York, I will call you on the phone right away.

6) Let's mow the lawn and then water the flowers.

7) We won't attack the enemy until we have bombarded enemy positions.

8) After we have inspected this camp, we will go to San Francisco right away.

IV. Pattern Drill

Differences in meaning of dzài, tsái, and jyòu

A. Dzài and Tsái compared

a. in contemplated action:

"再"	這兒的學生可以先學寫中國字再學認識中國字麼？	Are the students here permitted to learn to write characters first before learning to recognize them?
"才"	這個法子不好.學了怎麼寫以後才學怎麼念,一定學的很慢.	This method is no good. If one learns to write first before he learns how to read, he would definitely learn very slowly.

b. in completed action:

"才"	新bing都學了li正以後才學用bùchyāng的.	It was after they had all learned to stand at attention before the recruits learned to use the rifle.

Examples:

"再" used in contemplated action:

1)	母親叫我們洗了手再吃點心.	Mother told us to wash our hands before having a snack.

2) 我們算算有多少客人再去買bwōlibēi 吧.	Let us first figure out how many guests there are before we go to buy tumblers.
3) 我們先 jyǎnchá 第一Lyán 的 yíng 房再 jyǎnchá 第二 Lyán 的 yíng 房,行不行?	Would it be all right if we first inspect the barracks of Company A before we inspect those of Company B?

"才" used in contemplated action:

1) 新 bīng 報了到才可以在 yíng 房吃飯呢.	Recruits must first report before they are permitted to dine at camp.
2) 從明年起女學生才可以 tsānjyā syùnlyàn 呢.	Only from next year on will women students be permitted to receive training.
3) 到了十八歲才有 jī會應 jēng rùwǔ 呢.	Only upon reaching 18 years of age will a person have the opportunity to enlist in the armed forces.

"才" used in completed action:

1) 我是點了名以後才去睡覺的.	It was after roll call before I went to bed.

2) Hǎijyūn Lùjyūn,Kūngjyūn 都得 shòu 了 jī 本 syùnlyàn 以後 才能 tsānjyā 作 jàn.	Everybody in the Navy, Army, and Air Force must have received basic training before he can take part in fighting.
3) 我們是 chūngfēngchyāng 到了以後才 chūngfēng 的.	It was after the sub-machine gun had arrived that we started charging.

Exercise:

a. Answer the following questions orally:

1) Měigwo rén syān hē tāng dzài chr̄fàn háishr syān chr̄fàn dzài hē tāng.

2) Yàushr nǐ jīngshen buhǎu, jyòu hwéijyā; děng jīngshen hǎule dzài hwéilai hǎu buhau?

3) Dàu Jūnggwo chyù dzwò yǐnyánde shr̀ dzài hwéilai shòusyùn, nǐ ywànyi buywanyi?

4) Yǒurén shwō jyūnren yǒu hǎude jyūnjì tsái néng dǎbài dírén. Dwèi budwei?

5) Jèige yíngchyū yùngde chìchē tsái kéyi tíngdzai jèrde chìchējíyùngchǎng. Jēnde ma?

6) Nǐmen shr sywéle lìjèng, shàusyī tsái sywé chíbù-dzǒude ma?

7) Nǐ shr shòule jīběnsyùnlyàn yǐhòu tsái sywéde dzěmma bǎuyǎng wǔchì ma?

b. Fill in the following blanks orally using either dzài or tsái:

1) Wǒmen syān bǎ tsāngkù shōushrhǎule ______ bǎ chūngfēngchyāng fàngjìnchyu ba.

2) Nǐ yīngdāng syān gěi Jāng Syáujye dǎ dyànhwà ______ dàu dyànyǐngywàn chyu mǎi pyàu.

3) Bǎ hwǒchēpyàu mǎilaile_______chyù jǎu jyǎuháng lai ná syíngli bùhǎu ma?

4) Rénrén dōu děi jàndwèi______mǎidejáu pyàu.

5) Nǐde chìchē bǎule syǎn_______néng dzài sywésyàu kāi.

6) Děng dàu yínháng chyu nále chyán_______néng chyu lyǔsyíng ne.

7) Dírén shr̀ bèi wǒmen bāuwéile yǐhòu________tóusyángde.

8) Pàubīng bǎ dírénde fángyùgūngshr̀ hūngjīle yǐhòu, wǒmen ____________dēngde lù.

9) Tā shr̀ nàujūng syǎngle bàntyān________chǐlaide.

B. Jyòu and Tsái compared

a. "就" indicating immediate sequential action:

新 bīng 到了 yíngchyū 就得報告.	When the recruits arrive at the base, they must report in.

"才" indicating delayed sequential action:

我們到了這個學校五個禮拜才學念中國字.	Only after having been at this school for five weeks did we learn to read Chinese characters.

Examples:

"就"

1)	我每天下了kè 就回家我太太不喜歡我到城裏去.	Right after I get off from school, I return home. My wife does not like me to go to town.

2) Jyànchá完了王Pái長就回yíng房休息了,因為他很lèi.	Upon completing the inspection, Platoon Leader Wang returned to the barracks, because he was very tired.
3) 今天晚上點了名我就去睡覺,因為昨天我沒睡好.	I'll go to bed right after the roll call, because I didn't sleep well last night.

"才"

1) 學生報到以後才可以去拿書呢.	Students must first report in before they go to get their books.
2) Shòu jī本syùnlyàn以後我才知道jyūnjì那麼要緊.	Only after having received basic training did I know that military discipline is so important.
3) 太太小姐們都把頭shū好了才jàu的syàng.	Only after they had fixed their hair did the ladies and girls have their pictures taken.

Exercise:

Complete the following sentences orally using either jyòu or tsái:

1) Bǎ hwār jùnghǎule yīngdāng lìkè________jyāushwěi.

2) Lyǎngchībùdwèi yì dēnglù_______bǎ tāntóubǎu jyànjùchilaile.

3) Děng shwěi kāile wǒmen_______dzwò dyǎr chá hē hǎu buhau?

4) Chǐng nǐ yì syǐwánle dzǎu______fàngshwěi.

5) Shéi dōu děi děng lyùdēng______kéyi gwòjyē.

6) Jèige shr̀jyè shr̀ syān yǒu jī_______yǒu jīdàn, háishr syān yǒu jīdàn_____yǒu jī?

7) Dièrtsz̀ Shr̀jyèdàjàn shr yīnwei Rběn bùkěn tóusyáng wǒmen_______yùngde ywándžàn.

8) Tā dzǔng bugwāhúdz. Yǒu yìtyan Lyánjǎng fá tā le, tā_______gwāhúdz.

b. "就" indicating action which occurs "sooner than expected":

有的學生上 kè 以前一刻鐘就來了.	Some students come as much as a quarter of an hour before class.

"才" indicating action which occurs "later than expected":

有的學生上 kè 以後一刻鐘才來.	Some students arrive as much as a quarter of an hour after class has started.

Examples:

(Later)	1) 那個愛說話的Jì太太, 天黑了才走的.	Mrs. Jì, who loves to talk, left only after it was dark.
(Sooner)	2) 那位好看的小姐,天還沒黑就 lí開了.	That beautiful young lady left even before it was dark.

(Sooner) 3) Tsānmóu 長很早就到 Sz̄lìngbù 去了. The Chief-of-Staff went to the Headquarters very early.

(Later) 4) 那是 jyūn 事 mimì. 十分鐘以前我們才知道得 gūngjī 那個城. That's a military secret. It was only ten minutes ago that we knew we had to attack that city.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) It was only 7 a.m. when Gen.Li came to work.

2) We don't have inspection until next Thursday.

3) Why did you make the roast chicken so early?

4) The street lights won't be on until sunset.

5) As soon as the policeman left,he drove at a very high speed.

6) Up until one hundred years ago we had not built any railroads.

Homework

Translate the following sentences orally, using either dzài or tsái as an adverb preceding a verb:

1) After we have had our basic training, we will have special training.

2) Right after we have reported to camp, we will go to get our uniforms.

3) There won't be a roll call until we have had our breakfast.

4) After Mr. Jàu and Mrs. Jàu had kissed, Mrs. Jàu said to Mr. Jàu: "Pleasant journey."

5) After I arrive at Táiwān, I will call you on the phone right away.

6) Let's mow the lawn and then water the flowers.

7) We won't attack the enemy until our bombers have bombed enemy positions.

8) After the Commander has inspected this depot, he will go to see the motor pool right away.

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.339-345)

339.	兵	bīng	N: soldier	美國兵	American soldier
				jwāngjyǎ兵	armored cavalry
				工兵	engineer
				pàu 兵	artillery
				syàn 兵	military police
				bù 兵	infantry
				chí 兵	cavalry
				新兵	recruit
340.	陸	lù	BF: land	陸軍fù 女dwèi	WAC
341.	軍	jyūn	M/BF: army, military N: corps	陸軍	army
				hǎi軍	navy
				kūng軍	air force
				軍事	military affairs
				軍事 mìmì	military secret
				jítwán軍	army group
				軍gwān	officer(armed forces)

				軍fú- military uniform 軍人-soldier, military man 軍jì -military discipline 軍dwèi-troops
342.	團 (团)	twán	M: regiment(army)	團長- regimental commander 軍團-army(army unit) 軍團長-army commander
343.	營	yíng	N/M: battalion(army)	營長 - battalion commander 營chyū -fort, post camp 營房 -barracks
344.	連	lyán	N/M: company(army)	連長 - company commander
			CV: even including, even	連我都(也)不知道 - even I don't know
345.	排	pái	N/M: platoon(army)	排長 - platoon leader

L. 59

B. 句子

1. 美國陸軍裏頭，一團有幾營?

2. 聽說一團有三營 不知道對不對.

3. 一營有幾連呢?

4. 一營有四連，也許有三連.

5. 一連有幾排呢?

6. 也許有四排.

7. 一排有多少兵?

8. 平常每一排有四十多個兵

9. 新兵都已經報到了，從明天起就 shòu
jí 本 syùnlyàn

10. 汽車 jí 用 chǎng 上 tíng 着一 lyàng dzàijùng
車，上頭放着一門高 shèpàu.

11. 我們不但白天常常 lì 正，連晚上點名
的時候也得 lì 正.

12. 這個學校的學生有 Lù 軍，有 Hǎi 軍，也
有 Kūng 軍. 他們都是應* mù rùwǔ 的.

13. 這一連工兵預備明天去 dā jōuchyáu

*應 here is pronounced as yìng.

連連長也得去.

14. 離這個城不遠有一個營chyū , 所以禮拜六禮拜天街上有很多軍人.

15. 姐姐在陸軍fù女dwèi作事, 他說他們的軍fú夏天穿着很熱, 冬天穿着很冷.

C. Gù事

有一天, 有一個國陸軍裏頭有一件事情, 雖然不太要緊, 可是很有意思.

有一個團長把他的幾個營長都找來, 問他們:「聽說我們有一排人不喜歡住在營房裏頭, 是真的嗎?」

那幾位營長都說:「我們都不知道, 得問一問我們的連長.」

那些營長又都問他們的連長. 連長們也都說:「我們不大清楚, 得問一問我們

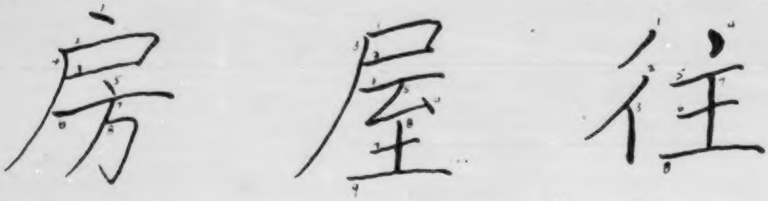
的排長.」

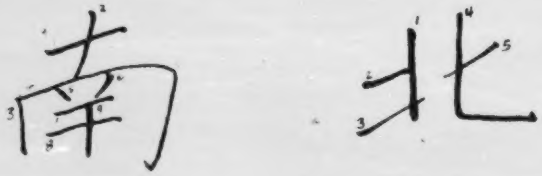
連長問那些排長的時候，排長們說：「是的．一點兒也不錯．他們不喜歡住在營房裏頭．第一，因為營房裏頭不許喝酒．第二，營房裏頭的 chwáng，睡着不太 shūfu．第三，常常得作 chíbù 走，lì 正，shāu 息甚麼的，ràng 他們很 lèi．第四，早上得起來的很早．第五，這個地方的風景也不好．第六．……」

沒等排長說完，連長說：「够了！要是我是兵，也不願意住在這兒！我去跟營長說說去.」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 221-225)





B. Radicals

1. 户 (door, 53) as in: 房
2. 尸 (corpse, 44) as in: 屋
3. 彳 (to pace, 60) as in: 従
4. 十 (ten, 24) as in: 南
5. 匕 (spoon, 21) as in: 北

LESSON 60

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	請你把你的bǎusyǎndāu兒jyè給我行不行?	Will it be all right for you to lend me your razor?
	B:	你的呢?	Where is yours?
	A:	我jyè給老王了.	I lent it to Old Wáng.
	B:	老王沒有麼?	Doesn't Old Wáng have one?
	A:	老王有.他jyè給別人了	Yes, he has one, but he lent it to somebody.
	B:	誰跟他jyè的?	Who borrowed it from him?
	A:	老Lyóu跟他jyè的.	Old Lyóu borrowed it from him.
	B:	老Lyóu的bǎusyǎndāu兒呢?	Where is Old Lyóu's razor?
	A:	老Lyóu的,他說他jyè給你了.	Old Lyóu said that he lent his to you.
	B:	對了.昨天我跟老Lyóu jyè了他的bǎusyǎndāu兒. 我現在把	That's right. I borrowed Old Lyóu's razor yesterday. Now I

	老Lyóu的jyè給你用, 你用完了給老Lyóu好了.	am lending you Old Lyóu's razor for you to use. When you are through with it, you may return it to Old Lyóu.
A:	好.我用完了就給他.	Fine. I will give it to him after I have used it.
2. A:	你gāng才到那兒去了?	Where did you go a moment ago?
B:	我到候車shr̀去了.	I went to the waiting room.
A:	作甚麽事情去了?	What did you go there for?
B:	我想要一張行車時jyān-表.	I went to get a train schedule.
A:	是跟誰要的?	Whom did you ask ?
B:	跟問事chù要的.	The Information Office.
A:	他們給你了麽 ?	Did they give you one?
B:	沒給我.	No, they didn't.
A:	你怎麽辦的?	What did you do?
B:	他們說,他們還有最	They said they had

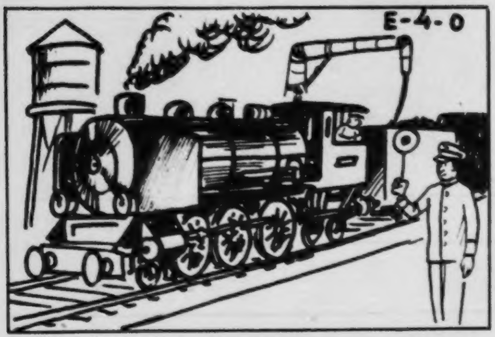
		後一張 可以 jyè給 我看看.	the last copy and they could lend it to me to read.
	A:	你拿回來了麼?	Did you take it back with you?
	B:	他們說 可以 jyè給我在那兒看,不能 拿回來看.	They said they could lend it to me to read there, not to take back with me.
	A:	你在候車shr̀ 還看見甚麼了?	What else did you see in the waiting room?
	B:	我想快點兒回來,所以沒看見 甚麼.	I wanted to come back quickly, therefore I didn't see anything.
3.	A:	你能 jyè給我點兒錢麼?	Can you lend me some money?
	B:	可以. 要多少錢?	Yes, I can. How much do you want?
	A:	幾毛錢.	A few dimes.
	B:	一塊,好不好?	How about a dollar?
	A:	不好. 我有一塊錢,可是我就要幾毛錢.	No. I have a dollar, and only want a few dimes.

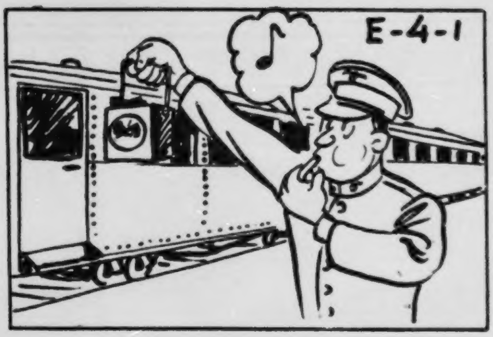
B:	為甚麼?	Why?
A:	我找給他錢,找不開了.	I am now making change for a person, but don't have small change.
B:	怎麼找不開了?	How come you don't have change?
A:	他買了七毛五的táng,給了我一塊錢,我沒有兩毛五找給他.	That man bought seventy-five cents worth of candy, and he gave me a dollar. I don't have the twenty-five cents change.
B:	那麼你就跟我 jyè 兩毛五就行了,是不是?	In that case you only need to borrow twenty-five cents from me, isn't that right?
A:	對了.	Yes, that's right.
B:	這兒就是兩毛五,你找給他吧.	Now here is twenty-five cents. You can give that to him.

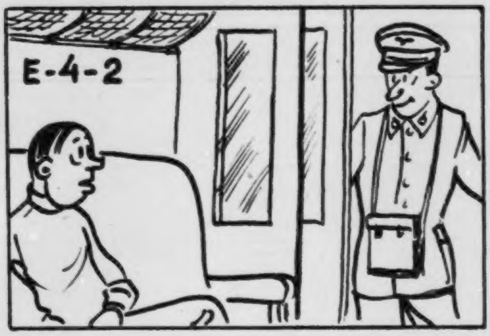
4.	A:	你們的新兵都是應 jēng rùwǔ 的麼?	Are all your recruits drafted?
	B:	不, lìng 外還有很多是應 mù rùwǔ 的.	No, in addition to those who are drafted, there are many recruits who enlisted voluntarily.
	A:	新兵學 lì 正 shāu 息, lìng 外還學甚麼?	What else do the recruits learn besides "attention" and "at ease"?
	B:	Lìng 外還學 chíbù 走, 怎麼用 chūngfēngchyāng, 甚麼的.	Besides these they also learn "quick time march", how to use submachine guns, and so forth.
	A:	Lùjyūn 給你們 jyūnfú, lìng 外也給你們平常穿的衣 shang 吧?	Besides uniforms does the Army also give you ordinary clothes?
	B:	平常穿的衣 shang 我們都得自己買.	We have to buy them all ourselves.
5.	A:	上次你到舊 jīn 山去也是走的這條路麼?	Did you also take this route when you went to San Francisco last time?

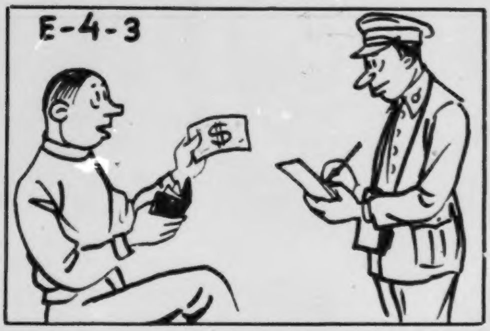
L. 60

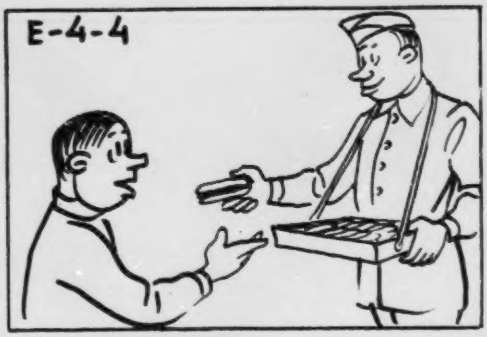
B:	不是這條,是 lìng 外一條	It wasn't this one, it was another one.
A:	是不是 LǏ Shr̀gwān 長帶你去的?	Wasn't it M/Sgt LǏ who took you there?
B:	帶我去的 dàu 是一位 shr̀gwān 長,可是不是 LǏ Shr̀gwān 長,是 lìng 外一位 shr̀gwān 長.	The gentleman who took me there was a M/Sgt, but he wasn't M/Sgt LǏ, he was another M/Sgt.
A:	這回你還打算住上回你住的那個 lyǔ 館麼?	Do you plan to stay at the same hotel that you stayed at last time?
B:	不了,我打算住 lìng 外一個好一點兒的.	No, I plan to stay at another and a little better one.

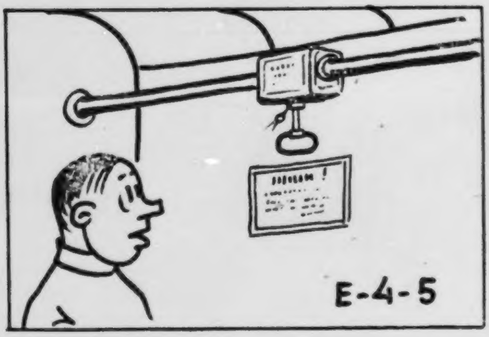

E-4-0

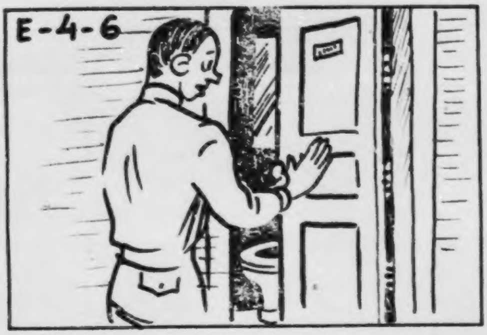

E-4-1
♪


E-4-2

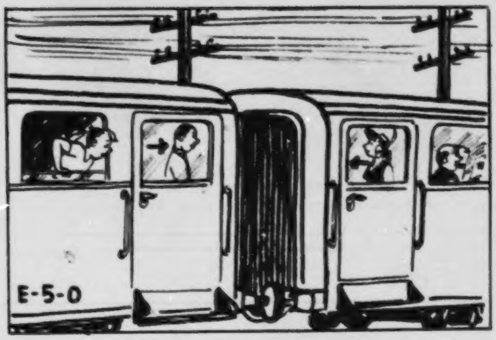

E-4-3
$

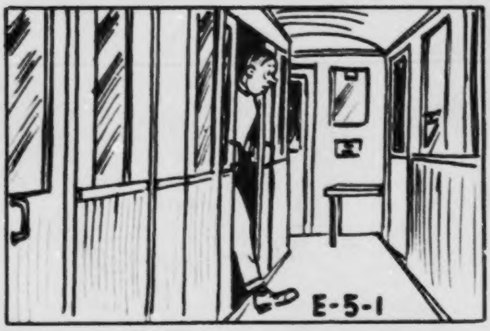

E-4-4

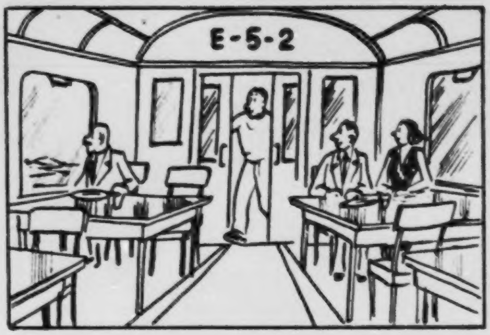

E-4-5

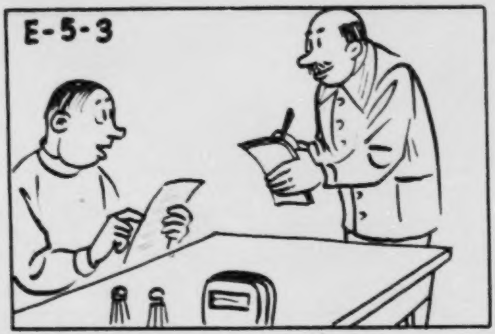

E-4-6

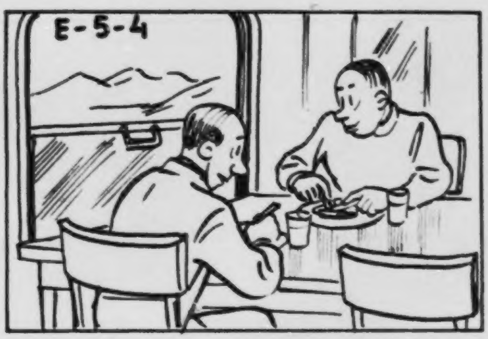
L. 60

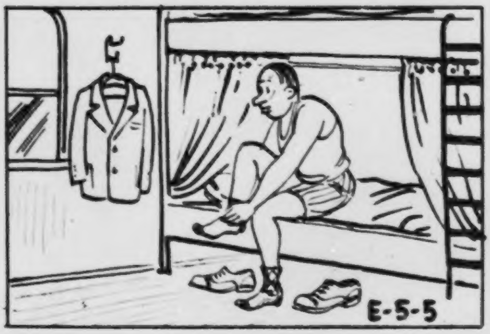


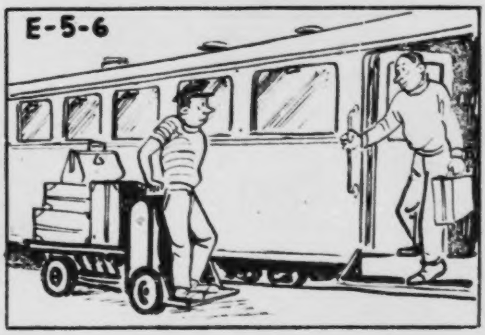












II. Basic Dialogue

火車已經進站了.Hwáng先生lí開了候車shr̀, 他叫一個jyǎu行tì他拿syāng子:

Hwáng:	Jyǎu行,你幫着我把我的syāng子拿到車上去.	Porter, help me take my suitcases to the train.
Jyǎu行:	好.您知道是那個站tái麼?要是您不知道可以問那個chápyàu的.	Yes, sir. Do you know which is your platform? If not, you may ask that conductor.
Hwáng:	我知道.是第五hàu站tái.你跟我走吧.	I know. It is platform No. 5. You can follow me.
Jyǎu行:	好.您在前頭走,我在後頭跟着您.	O.K. I will follow you.
Hwáng:	就是這個車.你把syāng子拿上去.	It is this train. Bring up my suitcases.
Jyǎu行:	好.您先上去.我進去以後,把syāng子給您放好了.您放心吧.	Yes, sir. You go aboard first. After I get in, I will put away your suitcases. Don't worry!

	(Hwáng 美生 把門 lā開, 走進去 坐下 以後,聽見 有 小孩子 賣報.)	(After Hwáng Mĕishēng opened the door, went in and sat down, he heard a newspaper boy selling newspapers.)
Hwáng:	賣報的,是今天的報麼?	Newspaper boy, are those today's papers?
賣報的:	是. 七分錢.	Yes, seven cents.
	(Hwáng 美生 買了報,看了 一會兒 報,他 聽見 有 一個 人 chwēi 口 dí, 車 就 慢慢兒的 開了.)	(Hwáng Mĕishēng bought a newspaper, read it for a while, and then heard someone blowing a whistle. The train started slowly.)
Chápyàu 的:	先生, 我 是 chápyàu 的, 要 看看 您的 pyàu.	Sir, I am the conductor, may I see your ticket.
Hwáng:	這 是 我的 pyàu.	Yes, this is my ticket.
Chápyàu 的:	不對. 您 買的 是 三等 pyàu, 怎麼 到 頭等 車 來了?	There is something wrong. You bought a third class ticket, why did you board the first class train?
Hwáng:	我 看 這個 車 人 少, 所以 我 就 到 這兒 來了.	I saw that this car had fewer people, so I came over here.

Chápyàu的：	不行．您還得給我十五塊錢．	That won't do. You will have to give me 15 more dollars.
Hwáng:	好．我給你二十塊，你找給我五塊．車上有賣吃的東西的麼？	O.K. I am giving you 20 dollars, and you can give me five dollars change. Is there anyone selling food on the train?
Chápyàu 的：	有．一會兒有賣 jyā 肉-myànbāu 的到這兒來．Lìng 外，您還可以到飯車去吃．	Yes, there is. In a moment a man selling sandwiches will come here. Furthermore, you may go to the diner to eat.
Hwáng:	謝謝．Chyáng 上的那個東西是甚麼？	Thank you. What is that thing on the wall?
Chápyàu 的：	那是 jǐnglíng．有 wéisyǎn 的時候，才 lā jǐnglíng 呢．	That is an alarm. You don't pull it unless in an emergency.
Hwáng:	Tsè 所在那兒？	Where is the toilet?
Chápyàu 的：	就在那邊兒．	It is over there.
	（到了晚上 Hwáng 美生	(Towards the evening, Hwáng Měishēng

	想到飯車去吃飯，他看見一位小姐.)	wanted to go to the diner to eat when he saw a young lady.)
Hwáng:	請問，您知道飯車在那兒麼？	May I ask where the diner is?
小姐：	從這個走lăng走過去，再過一個車就是.我gānggāng從那兒回來的.	You walk through this corridor. After passing another car, you will get there. I've just come back from there.
Hwáng:	飯好麼？便yi不便yi？您再跟我一塊兒去吃點兒，好麼？	Is the food good? Is it cheap? How about going with me and having a little more?
小姐：	我吃bău了.明天我們在一塊兒吃吧.	I have had enough to eat. Let us go to eat together tomorrow.
	(Hwáng 美生自己走到飯車，看見有三個人在那兒吃飯.)	(Hwáng Mĕishēng went to the diner alone and saw three persons eating there.)
Hwŏji:	就是您一個人麼？想吃點兒甚麼？這是	Are you by yourself? What would you care to eat? Here

	菜dān子.	is the menu.
Hwáng:	就是我一個人. 想吃魚.	I am alone. I want to have fish.
	(Hwáng 美生 正在吃的時候, 他有一位老朋友也來吃飯.)	(While Hwáng Měishēng was having his meal, an old friend of his came to eat.)
Lǐ:	老Hwáng, 你到那兒去?	Old Hwáng, where are you going?
Hwáng:	Nyǒuywē. 你呢?	New York. How about you?
Lǐ:	也去Nyǒuywē. 你吃的魚, 新syan不新syan?	New York too. Is the fish you are having fresh?
Hwáng:	很新syan. 你也吃魚吧.	Very fresh. I suggest you have fish too.
	(兩個人吃完了飯.)	(The two of them finished eating.)
Hwáng:	壞了! 我忘了帶錢了. 你能不能jyè給我兩塊錢?	Too bad! I forgot to bring money. Can you lend me two dollars?
Lǐ:	可以. 我想起來了, 我上次跟你jyè的那兩塊錢還沒還你呢.	Yes, I can. Now I remember, I have not paid you back the two dollars that I borrowed from you last time.

Hwáng: 那兩塊就算了吧.我今天跟你jyè的這兩塊錢,一會兒就還你.	Let's forget those two dollars. These two dollars I am borrowing from you I will pay you back in a moment.
(兩個人都回去了, Hwáng 美生到wò車去睡覺. 過了兩天他們都到 Nyǒuywē 了.)	(The two went back. Hwáng Měishēng went to his sleeper to sleep. Two days later they arrived in New York.)

Vocabulary

141.	chápyàude	查票的	N:	conductor (on bus or train)
141.1	chá	查	V:	check, investigate, look into
142.	chǐngwèn	請問	IE:	may I ask? may I inquire?
143.	chwēi	吹	V:	blow (a whistle or horn)
144.	-děng	等	M:	class (first class, tóu-děng; second class, èr-děng, etc.)
145.	kǒudí	口笛	N:	whistle
146.	dzǒuláng	走廊	N:	corridor, covered pass
147.	fànchē	飯車	N:	dining car
148.	hwā chyán	花錢	VO:	spend money
149.	hwán	還	V:	return (borrowed money or things)
150.	hwǒji	夥計	N:	waiter, clerk of a store
151.	jàntái	站台	N:	platform (railroad station)
152.	jìn jàn	進站	VO:	enter station
153.	jǐnglíng	警鈴	N:	alarm (bell)
154.	jyāròu-myànbāu (sānmíngjr̀)	夾肉麵包 (三明治)	N:	sandwich
155.	jyè	借	V:	borrow
155.1	jyègei	借給	V:	lend
155.2	gēn....jyè	跟……借	CV...V:	borrow from...
156.	lā	拉	V:	pull
157.	lìngwài	另外	Sp/MA:	another/in addition to, besides
157.1	lìngwàide	另外的	N:	other
158.	tsàidāndz	菜單子	N:	menu
159.	wéisyǎn	危險	N/SV:	danger/be dangerous, critical
160.	wòchē	臥車	N:	sleeping-car

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. Lend and Borrow

In English, the difference between lending and borrowing is made clear by using different verbs to indicate these two actions. But in Chinese, the word jyè is used in either case, only expressed in a different structure.

Wǒ jyèle tā wǔkwài chyán.	I borrowed five dollars from him.
Wǒ jyègei tā wǔkwài chyán.	I lent him five dollars.

Although the meaning of jyè may be clear from the context, it is advisable to use distinctive forms to avoid possible ambiguity. For lending the two following forms are most often used: jyègei and jyèchuchyu.

Wǒ jyègeile tā wǔkwai chyán.	I lent him five dollars.
Wǒ jyèchuchyule wǔkwai chyán.	I lent out five dollars.

For borrowing, the most commonly used form is: gēn....jyè

Wǒ gēn tā jyèle wǔkwai chyán.	I borrowed from him five dollars.

Translate the following:

1) My friend lent me his car.

2) He wanted to borrow five hundred dollars from me, but I didn't lend it to him.

3) This is not my book; I borrowed it from Mr. Wáng.

4) May I borrow a few chairs from you?

2. The Use of lìngwài

Lìngwài is most commonly used as a movable adverb and as a specifier. As a movable adverb it means "besides" or "in addition", but as a specifier it means "another".

2.1 Besides or in addition:

Tā lìngwài gěile wǒ wǔkwai chyán.	In addition, he gave me five dollars.
Lìngwài wǒ yǒu yige hǎu byǎu.	I have a good watch besides this one.

2.2 Another:

Nà shr̀ lìngwài yijyàn shr̀ching.	That is quite another matter.
Wǒ yàu dàu lìngwài yige dìfang chyù lyǔsyìng.	I am going to another place for a trip.

Translate the following:

1) I want to buy another suitcase.

2) In addition, he bought him a watch.

3) He has spent all the five hundred dollars he borrowed last month. Now he wants to borrow another five hundred.

4) I am sitting on this chair. Do you have another chair?

5) Miss Wáng is his girl friend, but in addition to her, he still has three or four other girl friends.

IV. Pattern Drill

A. Lend and Borrow:

a. jyègei or jyèchuchyu meaning "to lend"

Shr̀gwān長jyè給了我一個gāngkwēi. The master sergeant lent me a helmet.

b. gēn....jyè meaning "to borrow from"

我跟Shr̀gwān長jyè了一個gāngkwēi. I borrowed a helmet from the master sergeant.

Examples:

1) 我jyè給那個新兵一條lǐng帶. I lent a necktie to that recruit.

2) 住在我們páng邊的一個jǐngchá把他的口dí jyè給我孩子玩兒. A policeman, living next to us, lent his whistle to my child to play with.

3) 那個中國飯館兒jyè了一個菜dān子給我,ràng That Chinese restaurant lent me a menu so that I could learn the

	我學中國菜的名字.	names of Chinese dishes.
4)	母親把茶 hú 都 jyè 出去了,家裏一個茶 hú 也沒有了.	Mother has lent out all the teapots. There isn't a single teapot (left) at home.
5)	我跟飯車的hwǒji jyè了一個筆,好在車上寫信.	I borrowed a pencil from the waiter on the dining car, so that I could write letters on the train.
6)	王太太跟我 jyè 了一點兒肉做 jyā 肉 myànbāu. 他說明天就還給我們.	Mrs. Wang borrowed some meat from me to make sandwiches. She said that she will return it to us tomorrow.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Měigwo jyègei něisye gwó hěn dwō chyán?

2) Nǐ ywànyi buywanyi bǎ nǐde yáshwā jyègei byéren?

3) Bǎ dz̀jǐde shǒuchyāng jyègei byéren yùng wéisyan buweisyan?

4) Wǒmen sywésyàu bǎ chìchējíyùngchǎng jyègei chénglide ren yùnggwo méiyou?

5) Yínháng bǎ chyán jyègei nǐ yǐchyán, chá bucha nǐ jyālide chíngsying?

6) Yòurén shwō: yínháng jyòu jyè chyán gěi yǒuchyánde ren. Shr̀ jēnde ma?

7) Yínháng cháng bǎ tāmende chyán dōu jyèchuchyu ma?

8) Dyànyǐngywàn yǒushŕhou bǎ tāmende dìfang jyèchuchyu ma?

9) Gēn yínháng jyè chyán swàn buswan dyōulyǎn?

10) Chǐngwèn dzài Měigwo gēn yínháng jyè chyán mǎi fángdz rúngyi burungyi?

11) Yàushr yǒu rén gēn nǐ jyèle dyǎr yán hwòshr hújyāumyǎr, nǐ yě yàu tā hwán ma?

12) Shr̀jyèshang něisye gwó gēn Měigwo jyègwo dzwòjàn yùngde chwán?

13) Nǐ syǐhwan busyǐhwan lǎu gēn byéren jyè yān chōude rén?

14) Yìbǎidwō nyán yǐchyán Yīnggwo gēn Jūnggwo jyède dìfang, yǐjing hwángei Jūnggwo le méiyou?

15) Gēn yínháng jyè chyánde rén dōu shr ài hwā chyánde rén ma?

B. The use of lìngwài

a. "lìngwài" used as a movable adverb, meaning "besides" or "in addition":

我拿了一張行車時jyān表, lìng外 chápyàu 的又給了我一張. or 我拿了一張行車時jyān 表, chápyàu的 lìng外又給了我一張.	I took a train schedule, and the conductor gave me one (besides).

Examples:

1) 我們 shòu完了jǐ 本 syùnlyàn, lìng外還要 shòu 別的 syùnlyàn.	After we have received basic training, we'll receive other training (besides).

2) 我們的 wò 車這邊兒有一個 jǐnglíng, lǐng 外那邊兒也有一個 jǐnglíng.	There is an alarm on this side of our pullman. Besides, there is also an alarm on the other side.
3) 你得到站 tái 去等他, lǐng 外還得到行 li 房去拿行 li.	You have to go to the station platform to wait for him. Besides, you will have to go to the baggage room to get the baggage.

Exercise:

Complete the following sentences orally, using lǐngwài to introduce the second phrase or clause:

Dzǎushang nán sywésheng bǐ nyǔ sywésheng máng. Tāmen děi syǐlyǎn, shùkǒu,........

Ex: Dzǎushang nán sywésheng bǐ nyǔ sywésheng máng. Tāmen děi syǐlyǎn, shùkǒu, lǐngwài hái děi gwālyǎn.

1) Wǒmen báityan nyàn lyòuge jūngtóude shū, wǎnshang ....

2) Dzài jèige sywésyàu měityan syàwǔ wǒmen syě Jūnggwo dž,...........

3) Měigwo tàitai jēn máng, měityan mǎi tsài, jǔ fàn, ...

4) Shòu jīběnsyùnlyànde shŕhou, wǒmen sywé lǐjèng, shàusyī, ...

5) Shūpùdz mài shū, bǐ.....................

6) Dzǎufàn wǒ cháng chř yíge jīdàn, lyǎngpyàn myànbāu, ...

b. lìngwài used as a specifier meaning "another":

這個口dí不好chwēi.請你給我lìng外一個.	This whistle is not easy to blow. Please give me another.

Examples:

1) Dzāugāu! 這個jǐnglíng壞了.你lā lìng外一個吧.	Too bad! This alarm is broken down. Please pull the other one.
2) 火車進站了.怎麼沒進我們這個站tái,進了lìng外一個站tái了?	The train has entered the station. How come it didn't come to our platform but to another one?
3) Hwǒji對我說:"這個jyā肉myànbāu不是您的,是lìng外一位客人的."	The waiter said to me, "This sandwich isn't your order, it is somebody else's.

Exercise:

Complete the following sentences orally, using lìngwài as a specifier:

Jyǎncháde rén méichá jèijyàn syíngli,...........

Ex: Jyǎncháde rén méichá jèijyàn syíngli, chále lìngwài yíjyàn syíngli.

1) Jèijāng tsàidāndz bútài chīngchu, chǐng nǐ gěi wǒ ....

2) Chǐngwèn wǒ búshàng jèige tóuděngchē, shàng....... ....syíng busyíng?

3) Díréndé jyūnshrmìmì búshr jèige fúlwǒ gàusung wǒde,
shr̀..............

4) Jèishwāng syé yàngdz tài lǎule, jyàu hwǒji ná......
...........lái.

5) Wǒ méiyùng jèityáu pídài, wǒ yùngle.........

6) Nèrde fēngjǐng bùdzěmma yǒumíng, wǒmen dàu.........
..........chyu lyǔsyíng ba.

Homework

A. Read the following story orally several times:

Wǒ dzài fànchē chr̄le yíge jyāròumyànbāu, jèng yàu hwéi wòchē chyu shwèijyàu; jīnggwo dzǒulángde shŕhou, kànjyan yíge chápyàude yòu dzài chwēi kǒudí yòu dzài lā jǐnglíng. Hòulai lìngwài yíge chápyàude gàusung wǒ shwō: "Yíge èrděngchēde kèren bùkěn jyè chyán gěi tāde péngyou, bèi tāde péngyou yùng gwālyǎndāu nùngsžle. Chyán gěi wǒmen dàilaile nèmma dwō máfan!"

B. Read the following sentences out aloud. For every false statement write a correct answer in the parenthesis provided. (If using a tape recorder repeat the true statement. For false statements insert the correct answers.)

1) Wǒ dàu fànchē chyu chr̄le yíge jyāròumyànbāu.( )

2) Wǒ dzài dzǒuláng kànjyan chápyàude dzài lā jǐnglíng ne.
( )

3) Nèige jǐngchá jyòu lā jǐnglíng, méichwēi kǒudí. ( )

4) Shr̀ lā jǐnglíngde nèige jǐngchá gàusung wǒ tā wèishémma lā jǐnglíng de.( )

5) Yíge kèren bă gēn tā jyè chyánde rén nùngsžle.(
)

6) Sžlede nèige kèren shr̀ bèi rén yùng gwālyăndāu nùngsžde. (
)

7) Tāmen shr tóudĕngchēde kèren.

8) Tāmen tsúngchyán búrènshr.

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.346-353)

346.	尺	chř	M: a Chinese foot [N: a ruler]	Yīng尺	an English foot
347.	寸	tswùn	M: inch (Chinese measure of length)	Yīng寸	inch(English)
348.	封	fēng	M:(measure for letters) [V: to seal]	一封信	a letter
349.	收	shōu	V: receive, put away	收到	hand received
				收起來	put away
				收 shr	put in order, tidy up
350.	談	tán	V: converse, chat about	談話	carry on a conversation
				談一談	to have a little chat

351.	旁	páng	BF: the side of	旁邊兒	- the side of, flank
				旁門	- side door
352.	李	lǐ	BF: baggage	行李	- baggage
				行李房	- baggage room
353.	剛	gāng	A: just this minute	剛剛	- just this minute
				剛才	- just a minute ago

B. 句子

1. 我五尺十寸高，我說的是 Yīng 尺.
2. 你剛才作甚麽了？
3. 我給王小姐寫了一封信.
4. 信裏頭談些甚麽事情？
5. 對不起，我不能告訴你.
6. 你為甚麽給王小姐寫信？
7. 我前天收到王小姐一封信.
8. 你在走 láng 等着我，我去拿行李去.
9. 大門已經關上了，我們從旁門進去吧.
10. 去年李團長 jyè 給我的錢，我還沒還他呢.
11. 到北平去的車，不在這個站 tái 是 lìng 外一個站 tái.
12. 他太愛花錢，所以老跟朋友 jyè 錢. 剛才又跟我 jyè 了六十塊錢.
13. 現在進站的這些 wò 車是給陸軍工兵營用的.

L. 60

14. 昨天有兩連新兵報到，明天 lìng 外還有一排新兵要來.

C. Gù 事

從前有兩個國，一個國大，一個國小.這兩個國剛剛打完 jàng .那個大國給那個小國寫了一封信，叫他們送幾個人到大國來談一談.

那個小國收到那封信以後，很生氣，可是又不願意再打jàng ，所以就找了三個很不好看的，很 ǎi 的小兵到那個大國那兒去談談.

那個大國的人一看來的三個小兵都不到四尺三寸高，就很不高 syìng .叫他們快點兒回去，找幾個高一點兒的，好看一點兒的軍 gwān 來.

可是那三個小兵，不kěn 回去，說：「我

們不能回去．你們找幾個人跟我們談一談吧！」

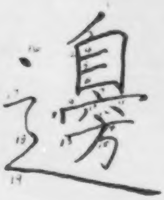
那個大國的人說：「大gài你們國裏沒有好看的人，也沒有高的人，對不對？」

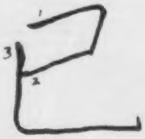
那三個小國的人說：「你們怎麼說，我們也不能回去． 要是你們想談，就跟我們三個人談，因為我們的軍gwān 說，他們送好看的人，高一點兒的人到大國，好的國去談．我們又難看又ǎi，所以送到你們這個國來.」

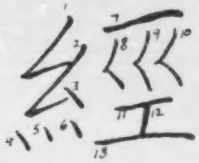
L. 60

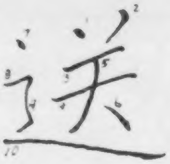
VI. WRITING

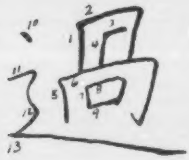
A. Writing (Characters 226-230)











B. Radicals

1. 辶 (stop and go, 162) as in: 邊,送,過
2. 己 (self, 49) as in: 已
3. 糹 (silk, 120) as in: 經

LESSON 61

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	我可以給你介紹一個女朋友.	I can introduce you to a girlfriend.
	B:	在那兒呢?	Where is she?
	A:	昨天來的. 現在在我們家.	She came yesterday. Now, she is at our house.
	B:	他怎麼來的?	How did she come?
	A:	坐汽車來的.	She came by car.
	B:	他多大歲數?	How old is she?
	A:	二十三了.	She is twenty-three.
	B:	他多高?	How tall is she?
	A:	五尺四寸半.	Five feet, four and a half inches.
	B:	我怎麼去看他?	How can I go to see her?
	A:	我想我們這麼辦. 你明天到我們家來看我們.	I think we will do this. You come to my house to visit us tomorrow.
	B:	就那麼辦. 我去看你們得穿的好點兒吧.	Let us do that. I must dress well when I come to visit you, I suppose.

	A:	不必，那位小姐很好；穿甚麼都不要緊。	No, you don't need to. This young lady is very nice. It doesn't matter what you wear.
	B:	就這麼辦。明天見。	I will do it this way. See you tomorrow.
2.	A:	張太太，我們去看李先生，好麼？	Mrs.Jāng, let's go to see Mr. Lǐ. Is that all right?
	B:	可以。可是我不知道你們有甚麼事情沒有？	Surely. But I don't know whether you have any business to do together or not.
	A:	我們一塊兒去，我想李先生一定很高 sying.	I think Mr. Lǐ will certainly be very happy if we go together.
	B:	他知道你去麼？	Does he know that you are going?
	A:	他知道，我給他打過一個 dyàn 話。	Yes, he does. I called him on the phone.

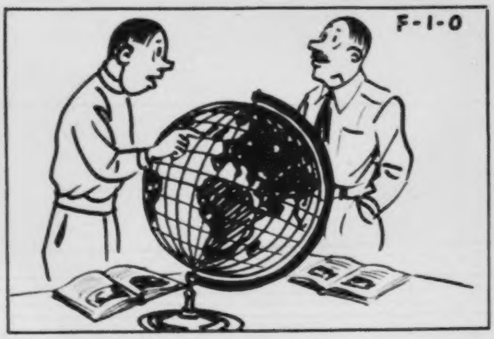
B:	他知道我去麼?	Does he know that I am going?
A:	我想他不知道.知道不知道我想沒甚麼.	I don't think he knows. But I think it does not matter whether he knows or not.
B:	那麼我不去了.	In that case I had better not go.
A:	我得去.因為我要跟他談一談我家裏的事.	I have to go because I have some family matters which I want to talk over with him.
B:	那麼我更不想去了.	In that case I am all the more unwilling to go.
A:	你那麼就不想看他了.	Then you don't want to see him.
B:	也許明天去看他.今天	Maybe I will go to visit him tomorrow,

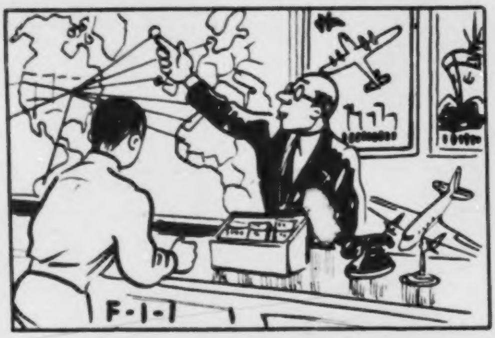
		不去了.	but not today.
	A:	那麼我就走了. 再見!	In that case I will go now. Goodbye.
3.	A:	我們這個舊汽車太舊了,得買一lyàng新的了.	This old car of ours is too old, we need to buy a new one.
	B:	這個舊的怎麼不行了?	How come this old one won't do?
	A:	舊的真不行了.	This old car really won't do.
	B:	怎麼了?	How come?
	A:	昨天走不了了,今天又走不了了;要是天天這麼樣兒,真得買新車了.	It didn't work yesterday, and it doesn't work today. If it is like this every day, we really need to buy a new car.
	B:	買新的很貴吧.	Buying a new car must be very expensive.
	A:	不怎麼貴.	Not very expensive.
	B:	買新的得先給很多	There must be a big

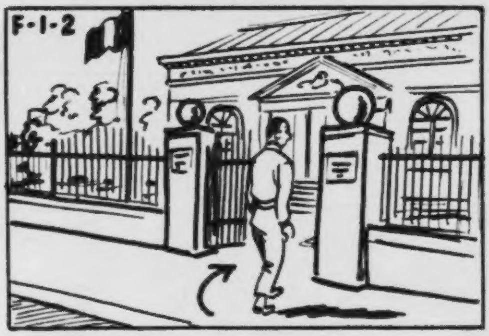
	錢吧.	down payment for a new car, I suppose.
A:	不怎麼多. 把我們的舊車給他就行了.	Not very much. Using the old car as the down payment will do.
B:	以後,我們每月得給很多錢吧.	Later on we will have to pay very much each month, I suppose.
A:	不怎麼多. 五十多塊就行了.	Not very much. A little over fifty dollars will do.
B:	怎麼那麼多?	Why is it that much?
A:	你想少給麼?	Do you want to pay less?
B:	我想給十幾塊錢.	I want to pay ten-odd dollars.
A:	那麼得給七十幾個月.	In that case we will have to pay for more than seventy months.
B:	怎麼那麼長?	Why is it that long?
A:	要是每月多給點兒, 就少給幾個月.	If you pay more each month, you will have less months to pay.

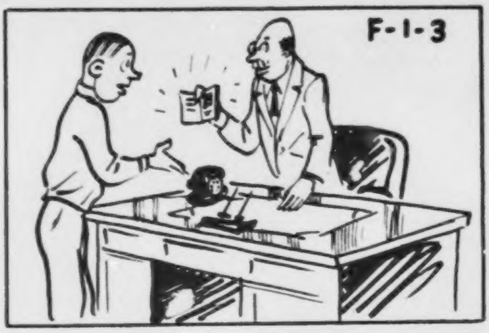
4. A:	你想到那兒去lyǔ行?	Where are you thinking of going for a trip?
B:	Wúlwùn 那兒,都行.	Anywhere will do.
A:	甚麼時候去?	When are you going?
B:	不lwùn 甚麼時候都可以.	Any time will do.
A:	你想怎麼去?	How are you planning to go?
B:	不gwǎn 怎麼去都好, 坐汽車,坐 fēijī, 坐火車,都願意.	Any way will do. I am willing to go by car, airplane, or train.
A:	你想跟誰去?	With whom are you going?
B:	不gwǎn 跟誰去都行. 就是我一個人去, 也很高syìng.	Anyone will do, no matter who. I will be very happy even going alone.
A:	你想在那兒住幾天?	How many days are you going to stay over there?
B:	Wúlwùn 幾天都可以. 就是住半天也比在這兒好.	Any number of days will do. Even just for half a day, it is still better than staying here.

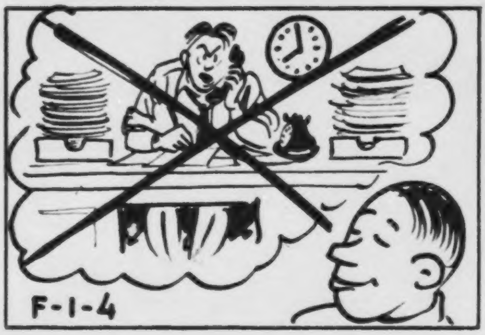
	A:	你想用多少錢?	How much are you going to spend?
	B:	Wúlwùn 多少錢都好. 就是剛够我的來回 pyàu, 我也願意.	Any amount of money will do. I am willing to go even if I have only the money for the round trip fare.
	A:	你是不是不喜歡在這兒?	Is it that you don't like to stay here?
	B:	對了.	That's right.
5.	A:	你的東西, 你打算給人麼?	Do you plan to give away your things?
	B:	我不打算給誰甚麼東西.	I am not planning to give anybody anything.
	A:	那麼, 你還想到那兒去買點兒東西麼?	In that case do you still want to go anywhere to buy a few things?
	B:	我也不想到那兒買甚麼東西.	No, neither am I thinking of going anywhere to buy anything.

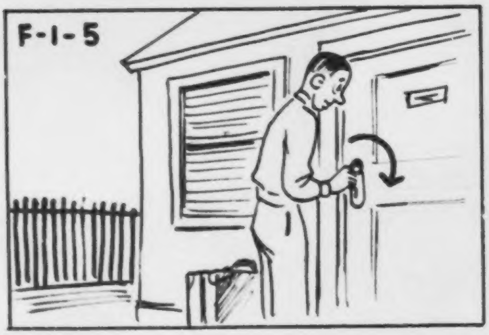

F-1-0

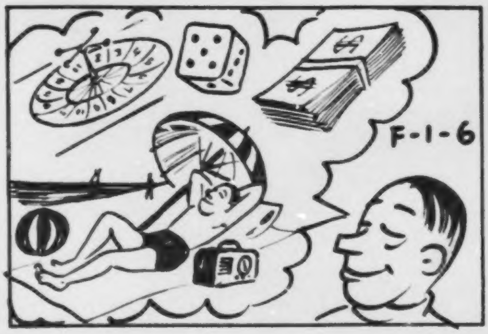

F-1-1


F-1-2


F-1-3


F-1-4


F-1-5


F-1-6

II. Basic Dialogue

Hwáng 美生坐火車出去 lyǔ 行以後覺得很有意思. 可是, 他還想到外國去看看; 所以他就跟他的一個朋友 shānglyangshānglyang:

Hwáng:	老李, 你前幾年到外國去 lyǔ 行. 你覺得那兒最好?	Old Lǐ, a few years ago you went abroad for a trip. What place do you think is the best?
李:	我覺得那兒都不錯. 你打算到那兒去?	I think any where is good. Where do you plan to go?
Hwáng:	不 lwùn 是那兒我都想去.	I want to go away no matter where it is.
李:	我是前五年去的. Yǐng 國, 法國, Dé 國我都去過. 那個時候跟現在也許不一樣了. 我覺得你最好到 lyǔ 行 shè 去問問.	I went five years ago. I have been to England, France, and Germany. These places today may not be the same as they were then. I feel that it is best for you to go and inquire at the travel agency.

Hwáng:	那個 lyǔ 行 shè?	Which travel agency?
李:	城裏的 那個 lyǔ行shè 很 好. 他們 可以 告訴 你 到 那兒 去 領 hùjàu.	That one in town is very good. They can tell you where to apply for a passport.
Hwáng:	好. 我 現在 就 去.	Fine. I will go now.
	(他 到了 lyǔ 行 shè)	(He came to a travel agency.)
Hwáng:	請問 我 想 到 外國 去 lyǔ行, 你 說 到 那兒 去 玩兒 最 好? 都 得 辦 甚麼 手syu?	May I ask where would you say is the best place to go, as I am thinking of taking a trip abroad. And what are the necessary procedures?
Lyǔ行shè的人:	想 到 外國 去 lyǔ 行, 那兒 都 很 有意思. 第一, 您 先 得 去 lǐng hùjàu. 第二, 您 得 到 外國 在 這兒的 lǐng 事館 去 chyānjèng.	If you are thinking of going abroad for a trip, it would be interesting everywhere. First, you will have to apply for a passport, and second, you will have to go to the consulate of the foreign country stationed here to apply for a visa.

Hwáng:	到那兒去 lǐng hùjàu?	Where shall I apply for a passport?
Lyǔ行shè的人:	就到那兒去. 您看那個 lóu 裏. 他們就可以 fā 給您 hùjàu.	Right over there. You see that building over there. That is where they issue a passport to you.
Hwáng:	他們要問我到那兒去麼?	Will they ask me where I am going?
Lyǔ行shè的人:	當然. 您得先 jìhwa 好了您的 lyǔ行 jìhwà.	Certainly. You will have to plan well for the trip first.
Hwáng:	你們可以幫着我 jìhwa-jìhwa 麼?	Can you help me plan?
Lyǔ行shè的人:	可以. 現在我們有一個 jìhwa: 先坐 fēijī 到 Yīng國玩兒一個禮拜.	Yes, I can. Now we have a plan which flies you first to England and you spend a week there.
Hwáng:	再到那兒去玩兒?	Where do I go after that?

Lyǔ行shè的人:	到法國玩兒五天；再到法國南邊兒的一個小國住兩個禮拜.	Then you go to France and stay for five days. Then you stay in a small country to the south of France for two weeks.
Hwáng:	為甚麼要到那個小國去？	Why should one go to that small country?
Lyǔ行shè的人:	在那兒可以dǔ.	Gambling is allowed there.
Hwáng:	好極了. 我就喜歡dǔ. 現在手syu應當怎麼辦？	That is wonderful. I just love to gamble. What procedure shall I go through now?
Lyǔ行shè的人:	第一, 先去lǐng hùjàu. 第二, 到Yīng國lǐng事館, 法國lǐng事館去chyānjèng.	First, go and get a passport. Second, go to the British and French consulates to get a visa.
Hwáng:	一共多少錢？	How much will it cost altogether?
Lyǔ行shè的人:	Fēijīpyàu, 船pyàu, 住lyǔ館, 吃飯, 都算在裏頭, 一共六百五十塊錢.	For the airplane ticket, the ship fare, the hotel charges, and food, with everything included, the total will be six hundred and fifty dollars.

Hwáng:	不貴,在那兒 dǔ 的時候要是我每天能 yíng 五十塊,我不但可以不花錢,還可以 yíng 點兒回來.	That is not expensive. When I gamble there, if I can win fifty dollars each day, not only will my expenses be covered, I will also be able to win some money to bring back.
	(Hwáng 美生很高 syìng 的到法國 lǐng 事館去請 chyóu chyānjèng.)	(Hwáng Měishēng very happily went to the French Consulate to apply for a visa.)
Hwáng:	請問,我想到法國去玩兒幾天,您可以給我 chyānjèng 麼?	Excuse me. I am thinking of going to France on a trip for a few days. Can you give me a visa?
Lǐng 事館的人:	可以.請你把你的 hùjàu 給我.	Yes, I can. Please give me your passport.
	(Hwáng 美生等了一會兒)	(Hwáng Měishēng waited for a while.)
Lǐng 事館的人:	你的 chyānjèng 已經辦好了.	Your visa is ready.

I. 61	請你注點兒意, 在法國的時候別把你的 hùjàu dyōu 了.	Please be careful not to lose your passport while you are staying in France.
	(Hwáng 美生 出了 lǐng-事館. 他想可以 jàn 時的把公事房裏頭的公事都忘了. 他 lì 刻回家把門 swǒ 上, 就想着他 yíng 了錢以後, 到 hǎi 邊兒上去玩兒的時候, 多麼高 syìng a. 可是他没想到他會 shū 錢的.)	(Hwáng Měishēng left the Consulate. He thought he could forget everything about his work in the office. He went home right away and locked the door. He was thinking how happy he would be after winning the money and relaxing on the beach. He did not think for one moment that he might lose money in gambling.)

Vocabulary

161.	chǐngchyóu	請求	V/N:	request
	161.1 chyóu	求	V:	beg, pray, implore
162.	chyānjèng	簽証	VO/N:	to issue a visa, to get a visa/visa
163.	dǔ	賭	V:	to gamble, to bet
164.	fā	發	V:	issue
165.	gūngshr̀	公事	N:	official business, official affair
	165.1 gūngshr̀fáng	公事房	N:	office
	165.2 bàn gūng(shr)	辦公(事)	VO:	transact official business
166.	hùjàu	護照	N:	passport
167.	jànshŕ	暫時	MA:	temporarily/temporary
168.	lǐng	領	V:	draw, receive, get
169.	lǐngshr̀gwǎn	領事館	N:	consulate
	169.1 lǐngshr̀	領事	N:	consul
170.	lyǔsyingshè	旅行社	N:	travel agency
171.	shānglyang	商量	V:	discuss, talk over, consult
172.	shǒusyù	手續	N:	procedure, process
173.	shū	輸	V:	lose (in gambling, bet or any contest)
174.	swǒ	鎖	V/N:	lock
175.	wúlwùn (or búlwùn, or bùgwǎn)	無論,不論,不管	MA:	no matter (who, what, etc)
176.	wúsyàndyàn	無線電	N:	radio
177.	yíng	贏	V:	win (in gambling, bet or any contest)

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. The various uses of dzěmma

Dzěmma means how, in what way, or in what manner.

1.1 As an adverb used after the subject and before the verb, it carries either the meaning of "how" in the interrogative or "how" in the exclamatory. Therefore the sentence should be punctuated to indicate which sense of "how".

Nà dzěmma syíng a!	How will that do!
Nǐ dzěmma chyù?	How are you going?

1.2 As an adverb used before the subject, it means "how is it....."

Dzěmma nǐ chyù a?	How is it that you are going?
Dzěmma tā bùlái a?	How is it that he is not coming?

1.3 As an indefinite when the sentence is a statement in the negative.

Nèige màudz bùdzěmma hǎu.	That hat isn't so good.
Jèige jwōdz bùdzěmma dà.	This table isn't very big.

1.4 As a verb:

Nǐ dzěmmale?	What is the matter with you?
Wǒ méidzěmma.	Nothing has happened to me.

2. The various uses of dwóma

Dwóma, interchangeable with dwó, also means "how" in the sense of to what degree or to what extent.

2.1 As an adverb after the subject and before the verb. Like dzěmma, the sentence may be interrogative or exclamatory.

Tā dwóma gāu a?	How tall is he?
Tā dwóma gāu a!	How tall he is!

2.2 As an indefinite in a negative statement.

Nèige rén méidwó gāu.	That man isn't very tall.
Jèige fángdz méidwó dà.	This house isn't so big.

3. The various uses of nèmma, jèmma, or dzèmma

Nèmma means like that, in that way, or in that case. Jèmma, interchangeable with dzèmma, means in this way, like this or in this case.

3.1 As an adverb after the subject but before the verb, nèmma means in that way, or like that, while jèmma or dzèmma means in this way, or like this.

Wŏmen dĕi jèmma bàn.	We will have to do it this way.
Jèmma bàn bĭ nèmma bàn hău.	To do it this way is better than that way.
Nĭ jyòu nèmma gàusung tā ba.	You may tell him in that way.

3.2 As an adverb before a stative verb, nèmma means so or like that, and jèmma or dzèmma means so or like this.

Wŏ bùjr̄dau tā dzwòfàn dzwòde nèmma hău.	I didn't know he cooks that well.
Kĕshr tā hái méiyou nĭ dzwòfàn dzwòde dzèmma hău.	But he still doesn't cook as well as you do.
Jèrde tyānchi chángcháng dzèmma hău ma?	Is the weather here often as good as this?

3.3 As an adverb before the subject, nèmma means in that case, and jèmma or dzèmma means in this case.

Nèmma, wŏ jyòu búchyùle.	In that case I won't go.
Jèmma, wŏ syăng tāmen dōu gāusyìng.	In this case, I think they will all be happy.

Translate the following:

1) Look, how beautiful she is!

2) Why is he so slow?

3) I think he would be angry if we did it like this.

4) Why can't he have his house insured?

5) A bathroom as good as this might cost one thousand dollars.

6) How is it that you haven't enlisted yet?

7) If you do it like this, it is very easy, but if you do it like that, it will be very troublesome.

8) This car isn't very big, nor is it very expensive.

4. The various uses of question words

The most common question words in Chinese-Mandarin are:

shémma	what
shéi	who
dzěmma	how (in what way)
nǎr	where
dwóma	how (to what degree)
něige	which
dwōshau	how many (more than ten)
jǐge	how many (less than ten)

For "why", Chinese use two words wèishémma, and for "where", Chinese use shémma dìfang or nǎr.

4.1 As question words in questions:

The primary function of question words is to form questions. It is worthy of note that in English, question words start questions, but in Chinese, question words do not have to stand at the beginning of questions.

Jèige shr shéide?	Whose is this?
Jèige shr wǒde.	This is mine.
Nǐ yàu dwōshau chyán?	How much money do you want?
Wǒ yàu lyǎngkwài chyán.	I want two dollars.

4.2 As indefinite words in negative statements:

Question words do not always appear in questions, but they may appear in negative statements. In this case they lose their original meanings and acquire new meanings as indefinites.

Wǒ méi shémma shr̀.	I don't have anything to do.
Tā búdau nǎr chyù.	He is not going anywhere.
Nèr lí jèr méi dwó ywǎn.	That place isn't very far from here.
Wǒ dzài jèr búrènshr dwōshau rén.	I don't know many people here.

4.3 As inclusive words:

Question words used in a sentence indicate inclusive ideas such as "everyone" or "everything" in the positive or exclusive ideas such as "no one" or "nothing" in the negative, when they are followed by dōu or yě. For emphasis, búlwùn, wúlwùn or bùgwǎn may be used before the question words, however, they are optional.

Shéi dōu méilái.	No one came at all.
Búlwùn dwó hǎu wǒ yě bùmǎi.	No matter how good it is, I won't buy it.
Jèijyāng hwàr tā dwōshau chyán yě búmài.	He won't sell this picture at any price.
Tā wúlwùn shémma dōu búhwèi.	He can't do anything.
Jèijyàn shr̀ dzěmma bàn dōu bùsyíng.	Nothing can be done about that matter, no matter how you do it.

4.4 Used in a two-clause pattern:

Question words may be used in two clauses of a sentence; they have the meanings such as whatever, whoever, whenever, however, or whichever. (As introduced in Lesson 48, Part III, Note 3)

Wǒ yàu shémma jyòu mǎi shémma.	I buy whatever I want.
Nǎr tyānchi hǎu, wǒ dau nǎr chyù.	I go wherever the weather is fine.
Shéi yǒu gūngfu shéi chyù ba!	Let him go, whoever has time!

L. 61

Nǐ gěi wǒ dwōshau, wǒ yàu dwōshau.	I will take as many as you give me.
Chǐng nǐ dzěmma rúngyi dzěmma dzwò ba.	Do whichever way is easier, please.

Translate the following:

1) I don't want anything.

2) He doesn't want to give anybody anything.

3) Whatever she says is always right.

4) I will leave whenever he arrives.

5) I don't have much money.

6) She likes whoever has money.

7) No matter how cheap it is, I won't buy it.

8) I will take whatever amount of money you have.

IV. Pattern Drill

A. The various uses of dzěmma

a. **Dzěmma as an adverb used after** the subject and before **the verb:**

Examples:

1) 在營房的走 láng dǔ錢怎麼可以!	How is it possible to gamble on the porch of the barracks!
2) 新兵不jù 意聽 Bān長的話.那怎樣行呢!	It just won't do for a recruit not to mind the sergeant!
3) 你怎麼鬧這個wúsyàn-dyàn的?現在壞了.	What did you do with this radio? Now it's broken.
4) 你打算怎麼跟他shāng-lyang那件事情?	How do you intend to go about discussing that matter with him?

b. Dzěmma as an adverb used before the subject:

Examples:

1) 怎麼這個城的lyǔ 行shè這麼小 a?	How come the travel agency in this town is so small?

c. Dzěmma as an indefinite

1) Tsānmóu長的fángshǒu jìhwà 不怎麼好.	The chief-of-staff's defense plans are not much to speak of.

2) 那位 lǐng事辦公事不怎麼快.	That consul is not too speedy in doing his job.

d. Dzěmma as a verb:

Examples:

1) 那個 lǐng事館怎麼了? 不管甚麼人都不 chyān-jèng.	What's the matter with that consulate? No matter who it is, they won't issue any visas.
2) 他怎麼了?他是 jàn時不跟我說話呢,還是以後也不跟我說話了?	What happened (to him)? Is he not speaking to me for the time being, or won't he even speak to me later on?
3) 没怎麼.你昨天對他太不客氣了.	Nothing's the matter with him. You were very impolite to him yesterday.

Exercise:

a. Say the following questions and answer them orally:

1) Nà dzěmma syíng a! Shūle chyán bùgěi syíng ma?

2) Nǐ shr̀ dzěmma chǐngchyóu dàu jèige sywésyàu lái nyànshūde?

3) Shòu jīběnsyùnlyànde shŕhou nǐ dzěmma lǐng jyūnfú?

4) Dzěmma syàndzài wǒmen gwālyǎn dōu yùng bǎusyǎndāu buyùng gwālyǎndāu le?

5) Dzěmma hěn dwō rén búywànyi jù ywàndz tài dàde fángdz le?

6) Dzěmma lǐng dàu Běipíng chyùde hùjàu bǐ byéde dìfang nán?

b. Render the following sentences into Chinese orally, using dzěmma as an indefinite or as a verb:

1) The sofa in our Company Commander's office is not very comfortable.

2) What is the matter with your radio?

3) Nothing. I guess it is too old.

4) Why is the travel agency closed for the time being? What is the matter with it?

B. The various uses of dwóma (or dwó)

a. Dwóma used as an adverb:

Examples:

1) 這個營 chyū的 tsāngkù 多(麼)大 a!	How big the storehouse of this camp is!
2) 這個營 chyū的 tsāngkù 多(麼)大 a?	How big is the storehouse of this camp?
3) Tǔngshwài 的 jyējí 多麼高 a?	How high is the rank of the commander-in-chief?
4) 新兵辦 rùwǔ 的手 syù 多慢 a!	How slow the procedures are, in handling enlistment of recruits!

b. Dwó used as an indefinite:

Examples:

Q: 那位外國小姐的 yǎnjing 很大麼?	Are the eyes of that foreign young lady very large?

A: 那位小姐的yǎnjing没多大..	That young lady's eyes are not much larger than ordinary.

Exercise:

Render the following sentences into Chinese orally, using dwóma as an adverb or as an indefinite:

1) How warm is it in the summer in this city?

2) It isn't too warm in the summer here.

3) How tall is the Chief-of-Staff of the First Division?

4) He isn't too tall, but he is quite young and intelligent.

5) How dangerous it was the other day when you crossed the street while the red light was on!

C. The various uses of nèmma, jèmma, or dzèmma

a. Used as an adverb before a functive verb:

Examples:

1) Lǐng帶應當這麼 ji, 不是那麼 ji.	A necktie should be tied this way, not that way.
2) 這個字kǔng怕不這麼念吧.	I don't believe this character is read in this way.

b. Used as an adverb before a stative verb:

Examples:

1) 睡在地下没有睡在chwáng上那麼shūfu.	Sleeping on the floor is not as comfortable as sleeping in a bed.

2) 美國離 Jyā拿大這麼近!	The distance between America and Canada is so short!
3) 自己有了孩子才知道父母 ywán來對我們怎麼好.	Only after you've had your own children do you know how good your parents were to you.

c. Used as an adverb before the subject:

Examples:

1) 沒人知道?那麼,你到問事chù去問問去吧.	Nobody knows? Then you might go to the information desk and ask.
2) "Dyànyǐng兒 pyàu 買好了." "那麼,我們走吧."	"Movie tickets have already been bought." "Let us go then!"
3) "你的汽車坐不下." "那麼,(我們) jyàu一lyàng出 dzū 汽車好不好?"	Your car cannot seat many persons. Then why don't we hire a taxi.

Exercise:

Render each of the following sentences into Chinese orally, using either nèmma, jèmma, or dzèmma as an adverb:

1) You may make a request in this way.

2) You must make the inspection in this way for the time being.

3) My husband didn't know that I spent so much money for my dresses.

4) Is discipline of the armored troops today always as good as it was?

5) In that case, no matter who comes, we won't issue a visa.

6) If this is the case, let's lock the door.

D. Various uses of question words

a. As question words in questions:

Examples:

1) 怎麼那麼多人 syànmù 有錢的人?	How come (there are) so many people (who) envy rich people?
2) 誰把我剛買回來的子 yí 了?	Who has spilled the soap powder that I just bought?
3) 坐在當中的這個學生有幾 Yǐngchř 高?	How tall is the student sitting in the center?

b. As indefinite words in negative statements:

Examples:

1) 他沒 jìhwà 到甚麼地方去.	He hasn't planned to go anywhere.
2) 老 Jàu 就 dǔ 了一會兒,沒 yíng 幾塊錢.	Old Jàu only gambled for a little while. He didn't win much.
3) 這個學校離城裏的 lyǔ 行 shè 沒多遠.	It isn't far (to speak of) from this school to the travel agency in town.

c. As inclusive words:

Examples:

1) 不gwǎn跟那個朋友 jyè 錢他都不還.	No matter which friend he borrows money from, he never returns it.
2) 地方小,車大.怎麼 tíng 也 tíng 不進去.	The space is too small and the car too big. No matter how we park, we wouldn't succeed in doing so.
3) Wúlwùn誰,我也不 tì 他作.	No matter who it is, I wouldn't do it for him.
4) 誰來,請 chyóu 手 syù 都一樣.	No matter who comes to apply, the procedure is the same.

d. Used in a two-clause pattern:

Examples:

1) 誰辦公辦的快,誰先休息.	Whoever does his work fastest gets to rest first.
2) 真奇怪!我太太怎麼做飯,怎麼好吃.	It's really strange. No matter how my wife fixes the food, it's always good.
3) 你愛給甚麼人打dyàn話,就給甚麼人打dyàn話.	No matter whom you wish to phone, go ahead and do it.

4) 你能 fānyi 幾句話，就 fānyi 幾句話. Translate as many sentences as you can.

Exercise:

a. Give two answers for each of the following questions. 1) Use a question word as an indefinite; answer negatively. 2) Use a question word as an inclusive word; answer positively or negatively:

Ex: Q: Nǐ yàu syèsye něiwei lǐngshr̀?

A: 1. Wǒ búyàu syèsye něiwei lǐngshr̀.

2. Wǒ (wúlwùn) něiwei lǐngshr̀ dōu yàu syèsye.

or Wǒ (wúlwùn) něiwei lǐngshr̀ dōu búyàu syèsye.

1) Chwūntyan kwài dàule. Nǐ dǎswan jùng shémma hwar?

2) Nǐ ywànyi bān něige lāsyītǔng?

3) Wǒmende lyǎngchībùdwěi yàu gūngji nǎr?

b. Complete the following sentences orally, using question words as connective words:

Syānsheng dzěmma syědž sywésheng...........
Ex: Syānsheng dzěmma syědž sywésheng dzěmma syědz̀.

1) Tsàidāndz yǒu shémma tsài............

2) Bānjǎng jyàu wǒmen lìjèng jīfēn jūng........

3) Jǐngchá shwō sùdù yīngdāng dwó kwài.........

4) Tàitai yàu wǒ kāichē jīnggwo nǎr..........

Homework

A. Read the following story several times:

Lù Dà-Jr̀ shr̀ Jyòujīnshān Jūnggwo Lǐngshr̀gwǎnde yíwei lǐngshr. Lù Lǐngshr bàn gūngshr̀ fēicháng kwài. Bùgwǎn shéi lái chǐngchyóu chyānjèng, tā dzǔngshr gāugausyìngsyìngde bāng rénde máng. Wúlwùn nèityan yǒu dwōshau rén lái lǐng hùjàu, tā yě néng hěn kwàide bǎ hùjàu fāchuchyu. Yǒusyē rén bùdǔng mǎi fēijī pyàude shǒusyù, yě jǎu Lù Lǐngshr bāngmáng. Nèisyē rén yàu tā dzwò shémma, tā jyòu tì nèisyē rén dzwò shémma. Yǒude rén búywànyi máfan tā, tā jyòu shwō: "Nà búdzěmma máfan, ràng wǒ tì nǐ dzwò ba." Lù Lǐngshr jēn shr̀ yíge hǎu rén!

B. According to the contents of the above story, complete the following sentences orally without referring to the text:

1) Lù Dà-Jr̀ shr............yíwei lǐngshr.

2) Lù Lǐngshr bàn gūngshr̀............

3) Bùgwǎn shéi lái chǐngchyóu chyānjèng, tā............

4) Wúlwùn nèityan yǒu dwōshau rén lái lǐng hùjàu,.......
....

5) Bùdǔng mǎi fēijīpyàude shǒusyùde nèisyē rén yàu tā dzwò shémma,.............

6) Yǒude rén búywànyi máfan tā, tā jyòu shwō: "............".

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.354-360)

354.	危	wéi	BF: danger	危險	- danger, dangerous, critical
355.	險	syǎn	BF: danger	危險	- danger, dangerous, critical
				bǎu 險	- safe, buy insurance, guarantee
				bǎu 險 dāu	- safety razor
356.	護 (护)	hù	BF: to protect	護照	- passport
357.	照	jàu	BF: 護照 V: to photograph [V: throw light upon]	護照	- passport
				照 syàng	- take pictures
				照 syàngjī	- camera

358.	求	chyóu	V: beg,pray,implore,seek after	請求 - request
359.	無 无	wú	BF: no(lit.) without	無論 - no matter (who, what,etc) 無 syàndyàn - radio
360.	論	lwùn	BF: 無論	無論 - no matter (who,what,etc)

B: 句子

1. 要是有第三次世界大 jàn，那兒都很危險.
2. 你在外國的時候，一定老得帶着護照嗎?
3. 你可以把你的護照放在行李裏嗎?
4. 不可以. 因為我不能老帶着我的行李.
5. 護照 dyōu 了，你不可以請求他們再 fā 一個護照給你嗎?
6. 無論公事怎麼忙，你還應當給父親寫一封信.
7. 不論你是多麼要緊的人，出國也得有護照.
8. 行李剛送到 lyǔ 行 shè 去了，都保險了.
9. 我家裏，誰都愛照 syàng，可是誰都照不好.
10. Lǐng 事館離學校沒幾里路，我們去跟 lǐng 事談談吧.

11. 排長收到他的軍 fú 了, 可是短了半尺, kwān 了兩寸.

C. Gù 事

我有一個日本朋友, 他住在美國. 有一天, 他想到美國北邊兒的 Jyā 拿大 (Canada) 國去玩兒玩兒.

我跟他說:「你不是美國人, 到那邊兒去很不方便, 也很 máfan .」

可是他一定要去. 後來, 他就去了. 回來以後, 他告訴我, 那次 lyǔ 行好危險. 我問他怎麼很危險. 他說:「我差一點兒就回不來了.」我說:「怎麼差一點兒就回不來了?」他說:「美國跟 Jyā 拿大當中, 有一個 chyáu . Chyáu 的南邊兒那一半兒是美國的, 北邊兒這一半兒是 Jyā 拿大的.」我說:「那個 chyáu 一定很長吧!」他說:「是的.

L.61

我從美國出去的時候，他們沒問我甚麼.」我說:「那很好 a !」他說:「不好. 我到了 Jyā拿大的時候，他們不 ràng 我進去，因為我沒有護照.」我說:「你就回來了嗎?」他說:「回來 dàu 是回來了，可是不是那麼容易. 因為美國這邊又不 ràng 我進來，因為我沒帶護照.」我說:「你怎麼辦的?」他說:「我對那個美國人說，要是你不 ràng 我進來，我就得死在這兒!」我說:「你真想死嗎?」他說:「我不想死. 我說完了，那個美國人就到屋子裏去了. 我等他不 jù意的時候，就從旁邊的一個小門兒進來，就回到美國來了.」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 231-235)

街 舖 館

(鋪) (舘)

每 夜

B. Radicals

1.	行	(go, do, 144)	as in:	街
2.	舌	(tongue, 135)	as in:	舖, 舘
3.	食	(eat, 184)	as in:	館
4.	毋	(do not, 80)	as in:	每
5.	夕	(evening, 36)	as in:	夜

LESSON 62

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A:	您到那兒去了?	Where did you go?
B:	我到我的公事房去了.	I went to my office.
A:	您的公事房在那兒?	Where is your office?
B:	在法國 lǐng 事館的 lóu 上.	It is above the French Consulate.
A:	您在法國 lǐng 事館作事麼?	Do you work at the French Consulate?
B:	我的公事房在法國 lǐng 事館的 lóu 上, 可是我不在法國 lǐng 事館作事.	My office is above the French Consulate, but I do not work at the French Consulate.
A:	你是 Yīng 國 jyūngwān 麼?	Are you a British officer?
B:	是的, 我是 Yīng 國 lyánlwò-jyūngwān.	Yes, I am a British liaison officer.
A:	你是從 Yīng 國來的麼?	Did you come from England?
B:	是的, 我剛從 Yīng 國來的.	Yes, I just came from England.

A:	您在您的公事房都作甚麼了？	What did you do at your office?
B:	沒作甚麼. 買了一個 gāngchín 叫人給 bān 上去.	I didn't do anything. I bought a piano and asked some people to move it up there.
A:	您叫誰把 gāngchín bān 上去的？	Whom did you ask to move the piano up there?
B:	我叫賣gāngchín的給我 bān 上去的.	I asked the man who sold the piano to move it up for me.
A:	他 tì 你 bān 上去了麼？	Did he move it for you?
B:	他沒 tì 我 bān 上去, 因為他們的人太少, 得要四個人才能 bān 得上去呢! 並且還得把舊的 gāngchín給 bān 下來.	He didn't move it up for me because he didn't have enough people. It takes four men to move the piano up. Besides, the old piano has to be moved down.
2. A:	昨天你們 bān 家, 已經	Did you finish moving

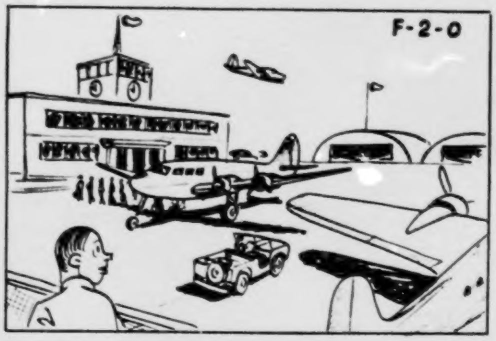
bān 完了麼?	yesterday?
B: 没呢. 我們就 bān 來了幾件大東西.	No, we didn't. We only moved a few big pieces here.
A: 甚麼時候 bān 來的?	When were they moved here?
B: 早上我 bān 來了兩件, 下午我弟弟幫着我 bān 來了三件.	In the morning I moved two pieces here, and in the afternoon my younger brother helped me in moving three pieces.
A: 你們還有幾件没 bān 來呢?	How many more pieces do you still have to move?
B: 還有四五件. 我想今天就可以 bān 完了.	There are still four or five pieces. I think I will be able to finish moving them today.
A: 現在您太太在那兒呢?	Where is your wife now?
B: 他還在那個老地方呢.	She is still at our old place.
A: 你們作飯的東西都 bān 來了麼?	Have you moved all your cooking utensils here yet?

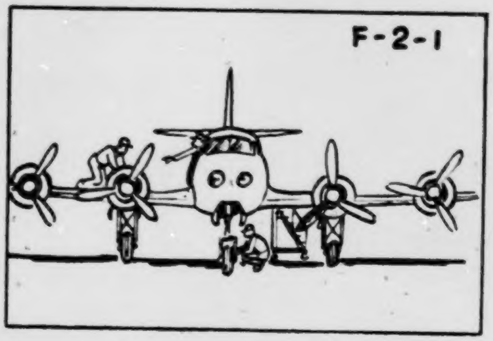
	B:	沒呢.	No, I haven't.
	A:	為甚麼?	Why?
	B:	我太太說,別 bān 去,因為還得在那兒作飯呢.	My wife said not to take them away, because she will have to cook with them over there.
3.	A:	你要 lǐng 的東西都 lǐng 來了麼?	Did you get all the things that you wanted to requisition?
	B:	沒呢. 張上 shr̀ 不給我.	No, not yet. SFC Jāng won't issue them to me.
	A:	為甚麼他不給你?	Why won't he issue them to you?
	B:	因為我們連長沒告訴他.	Because our company commander didn't tell him to.
	A:	現在你想怎麼辦?	What are you going to do about it now?
	B:	我想別的法子再去 lǐng.	I will think of some other way to get them.
4.	A:	你甚麼時候去請求 chyānjèng?	When are you going to apply for a visa?
	B:	我 lǐng 了護照再去	After I have got my

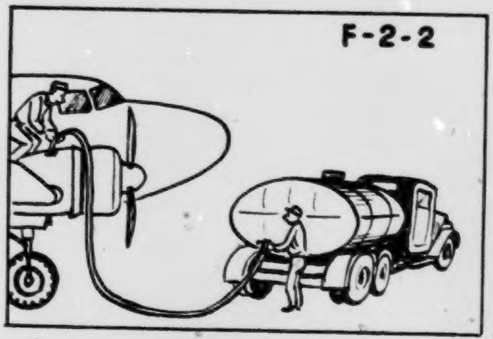
請求 chyānjèng.	passport, I will go to apply for a visa.
A: 你甚麼時候去lǐng護照?	When are you going to apply for a passport?
B: 我吃了飯再去lǐng護照.	After I have eaten, I will go to apply for a passport.
A: 為甚麼不現在就去?	Why don't you go now?
B: 他們現在不辦公.	Because this is not their office hour.
A: 不會說外國話,護照lǐng得來lǐng不來?	If you can't speak a foreign language, will you be able to apply for a passport or not?
B: Lǐng得來.	Yes, you can.
5. A: 你昨天都作甚麼了?	What did you do yesterday?
B: 我jìhwa我們到舊jīn山去都買甚麼.	I was planning what to buy when we go to San Francisco.
A: 我可以聽聽你的jìhwà麼?	Can I hear your plan?
B: 我想給我太太買點兒	I think I will buy some cosmetics for

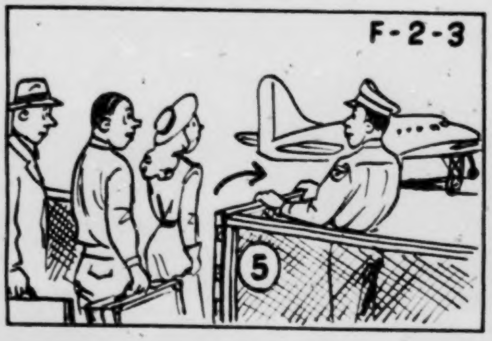
L. 62	hwàjwāngpǐn..	my wife.
A:	這不行.	This won't do.
B:	為甚麼?	Why not?
A:	女人的 hwàjwāngpǐn 你不懂, 要是你買了, 他還要再買.	You know nothing about a lady's cosmetics. She would want to buy more herself, even if you did buy some for her.
B:	為甚麼?	Why?
A:	也許不够 syāng, 也許不够紅. 所以女人的 hwàjwāngpǐn 最好 ràng 他們自己買.	The cosmetics may not be fragrant enough or red enough. Therefore, it is best to let the ladies buy their own cosmetics.
B:	好. 我現在就去再想想吧.	Fine. I will go and think it over some more now.

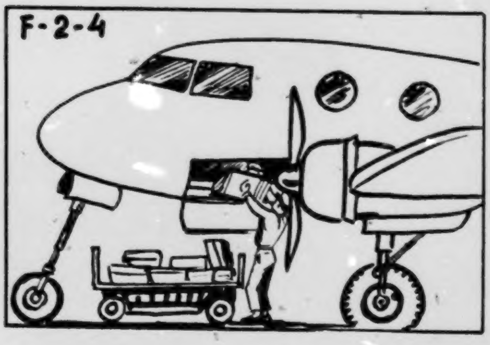
L. 62

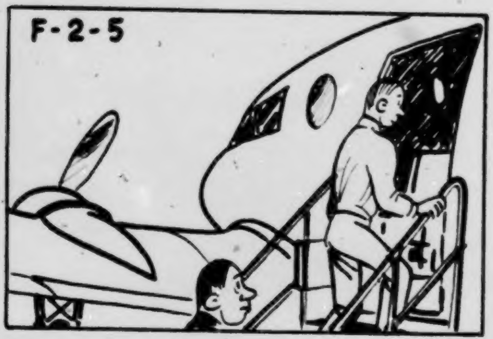

F-2-0

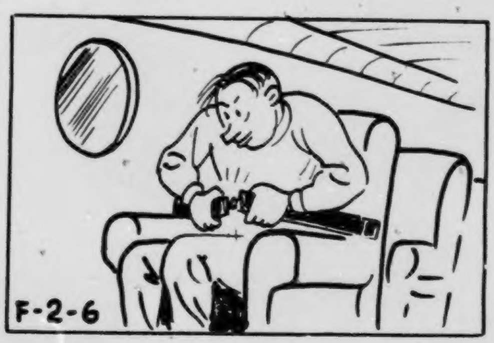

F-2-1


F-2-2

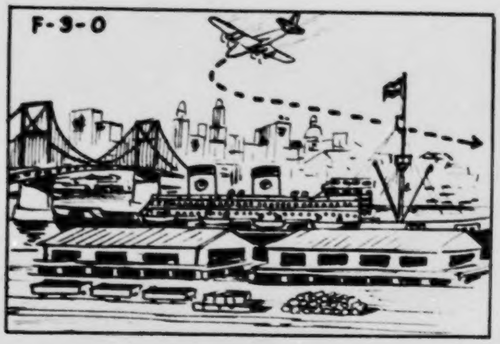

F-2-3

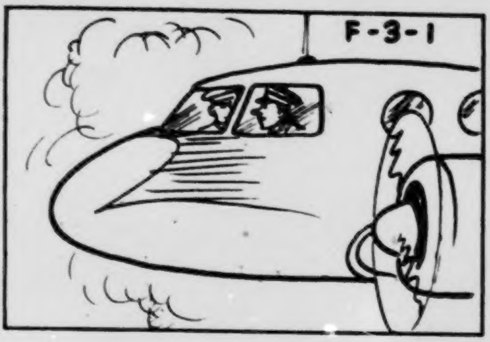

F-2-4

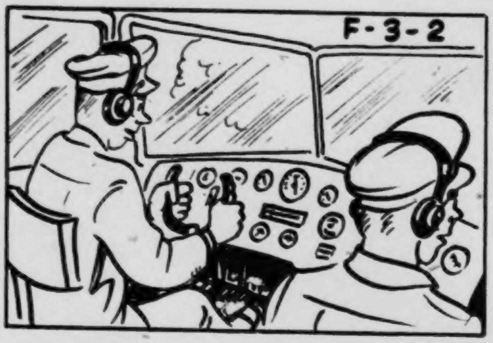

F-2-5

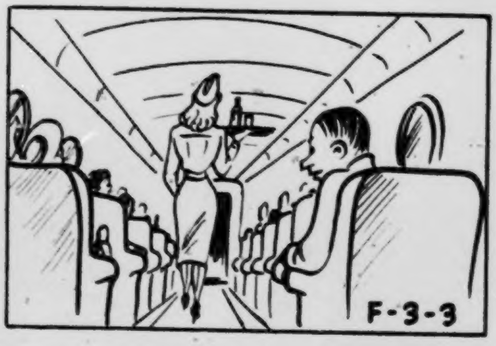

F-2-6

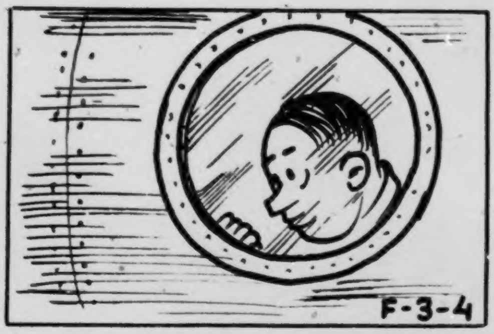
L. 62

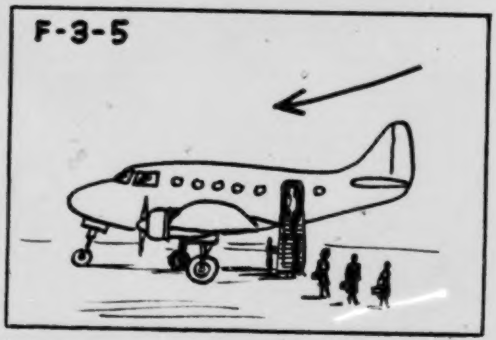

F-3-0

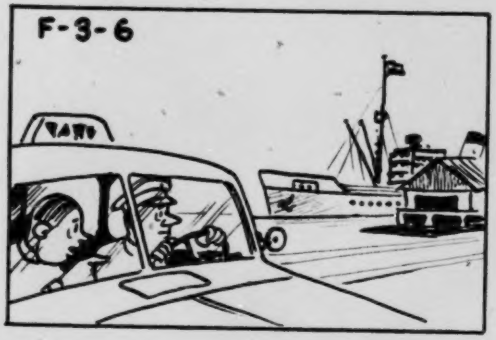

F-3-1


F-3-2


F-3-3


F-3-4


F-3-5


F-3-6

II. Basic Dialogue

Hwǎng 美生 到了 fēijīchǎng, 看見 fēijīchǎng 有 幾 jyà 四 yǐnchíng 的 fēijī. 有 一 jyà fēijī 有 兩個 工人 在 那兒 jyǎnchá jīchì. Lìng 外 還 有 一 jyà fēijī 有 兩個 工人 在 那兒 jyā yóu. 後來, 他 到了 fēijīchǎng 的 問事 chù 去 問:

Hwáng:	請 問, 我 甚麼時候上 fēijī? 從 那兒 走 ?	May I ask, when do I board the airplane? And how do I get to the plane?
問事 chù 的 人:	現在 您 就 去 吧. 從 第五 hàu 門 出去 就 行了.	Why don't you go now. Go through Gate No.5 and you will get there.
Hwáng:	第五 hàu 門 在 那兒 ?	Where is Gate No.5?
問事chù 的 人:	您 看, 那兒 就 是 第五 hàu 門. 有 一個 女人 已經 站在 那兒 了. 我 想 您 到 那兒 的 時候 就 可以 過去了.	See! There is Gate No.5. There is a lady already standing there. I think you can go through as you get there.

Hwáng:	我的行李呢？	How about my baggage?
問事chù的人:	您的行李已經在fēijī上了. 您看那兒有一個工人正在bān你們lyǔ客的行李呢.	Your baggage has already been put on the airplane. See, there is a workman now moving the baggage of the passengers.
Hwáng:	過第五hàu門的時候, 要把我的fēijīpyàu給那個人麼？	Should I give the ticket to that man there when I pass through Gate No.5?
問事chù的人:	不. 那個人就看看您的pyàu. 您不必把您的pyàu給他.	No. That man will only take a look at your ticket. Don't give your ticket to him.
Hwang:	Kūng中小姐都gwǎn甚麼?	What does the stewardess do?
問事chù的人:	他gwǎn的事情很多. 最要緊的,是看看lyǔ客是不是把ānchywán帶都jì緊了. 先生,對不起,	She does a lot of things. The most important thing is to check if the passengers have buckled their safety belts tightly. Excuse me, sir!

	我不能再 syángsyi 的說了,,因為還有很多人要問我事情呢，真對不起，我就能 jyǎndan 的 hwéida 您．	I can't go into details as there are still quite a few people here who want to ask me information. Sorry indeed, I can only answer you briefly.
Hwáng:	沒甚麼．謝謝您．	Think nothing of it. Thank you.
	(Hwáng 美生在上 fēijī 的時候，pèng 見了一位謝先生，所以他們兩個人就坐在一塊兒了.)	(When Hwáng Měishēng was boarding the airplane, he met a Mr. Syè. The two of them sat together.)
謝:	Fēijī 起 fēi了麼 ?	Has the airplane taken off?
Hwáng:	剛剛起 fēi. 可是現在還沒離開這個城呢．	Yes, it just took off, but it hasn't left the city yet.
謝:	對了. Fēijī 還在這個	That's right. The airplane is still

	城的上 kūng pánsywán 呢，我從這個 chwānghu 往外看，城裏頭的大 lóu 還看的很清楚呢．	circling over the city. Looking out of the window, I can still see the tall buildings of the city very clearly.
Hwáng:	這個大 fēijī 坐着真 shū服．	It is really comfortable to sit in this big plane.
謝：	Shū服 dàu shū服，就是這個 ānchywán 帶 jì 的太緊．	It is comfortable all right, but this safety belt is too tight on me.
Hwáng:	你別 jì 的那麼緊．等一會兒就可以不必 jì 了，很 ānchywán.	You don't have to make it so tight. And you won't need to have it on after a while. It is very safe.
謝：	好．老 Hwáng，你知道 syàng 這麼大的 fēijī，得有幾個人開？	Fine. Old Hwáng, do you know how many persons it takes to operate a big plane like this?

Hwáng:	對yu 那件事情，我知道的不大清楚.可是我知道有一個 jyàshřywán, 他 gwǎn 開 fēijr̄.還有一個無 syàndyàn tūngsyìnywán gwǎn 跟 fēijr̄chǎng lyánlwò.	I don't know much about that matter. But I know there is a pilot who flies the plane, and there is also a radio operator in charge of communications with the airports.
謝:	那位 kūng 中小姐過來了，你要甚麼麼？	That stewardess has come over. Do you need anything?
Hwáng:	不要甚麼.可是我想看看他.真好看!	No, I don't. But I like to take a look at her. She's really pretty!
謝:	你要一點兒東西吃麼?	Do you want anything to eat?
Hwáng:	不要甚麼.因為 fēijr̄ 快要 jyànglwò了. Jyànglwò 以後我再吃一個 jyā 肉 myànbāu 就行了. 在 fēijr̄ 上要是吃的太多不太好.	No, I don't because the plane is about to land. I will have a sandwich after landing.That would be enough for me. It is better not to eat too much on the plane.

謝:	真快. 你看, fēijī 已經 jyànglwò 了, 那邊兒有很多人, 他們都是來等他們的朋友的.	This is really fast. See, the airplane has already landed. There are a lot of people there waiting for their friends.
Hwáng:	有人在那兒等你麼?	Is there anyone waiting for you?
謝:	沒有. 我出去 lyǔ 行的時候, 不願意 máfan 別人, 所以我這次到這兒來, 誰都沒告訴.	No, there isn't. I don't like to trouble people when I am on a trip, so I didn't let anyone know about this trip.
Hwáng:	我也是那樣兒, 因為那些朋友們都很忙. 要是你告訴他們, 他們不來, 一定覺得不太好. 可是要是	It is the same with me, because those friends of mine are all very busy. If I had told them and they wouldn't come to meet me, they wouldn't feel right. If they had come, I wouldn't feel right.

他們來了，我又覺得
不大好。

謝：現在你要到那兒去？	Where are you going now?
Hwáng: 我去上船。你呢？	I am boarding a ship. How about you?
謝：我也去上船。	I am boarding a ship too.
Hwáng: 我們叫一個出dzū汽車就行了吧？	Would it be all right if we shared a taxi?
謝：對了。	That's all right.

L. 62

Vocabulary

178.	ānchywándài	安全帶	N:	safety belt
178.1	ānchywán	安全	N/SV:	safety/safe
179.	chǐfēi	起飛	V:	take off (airplane)
180.	dwèiyu	對於	CV:	toward, concerning
181.	gūngren	工人	N:	employee, workmen
182.	gwǎn	管	V:	manage, in charge of
183.	hwéidá	回答	V/N:	answer
184.	jǐn	緊	SV:	be tight; strict
185.	jyā yóu	加油	VO:	fill in gasoline or oil
186.	jyàshǐywán	駕駛員	N:	pilot (of a plane)
187.	jyǎndan	簡單	SV:	be simple
188.	jyànglwò	降落	V:	land (from the air)
189.	kūngjūngsyáujye	空中小姐	N:	airline stewardess
190.	lyánlwò	聯絡	V/N:	keep contact/contact
190.1	lyánlwò jyūngwān	聯絡軍官	N:	liaison officer
191.	lyǔkè	旅客	N:	passenger
192.	pánsywán	盤旋	V:	circle
193.	pèngjyan	碰見	V:	meet (accidentally)
194.	shàngkūng	上空	N:	sky, air, in the sky, in the air, overhead
195.	syángsyi	詳細	SV:	in detail
196.	tūngsyìnywán	通信員	N:	communications operator
196.1	tūngsyìn	通信	VO:	communicate
197.	yǐnchíng	引擎	N:	engine

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. The uses of dzài

Dzài is a fixed adverb which carries at least two meanings commonly used.

1.1 "Again" or "some more"

It is used to show that a previous action will be repeated in the future, and it is stressed.

Tā yǐjīng mǎile yíge, hái yàu dzài mǎi yíge.	He has already bought one and wants to buy another one.
Dzwótyan tā dau Nyǒuywe chyùle. Míngtyan hái yàu dzài chyù.	He went to New York yesterday. Tomorrow he will go again.

1.2 "And then"

Dzài is used to show the sequence of two actions and is placed before the verb of the second action. It means "and then", or "not until" or "before". In this case it is often not stressed.

Nǐ chr̄wán fàn dzài nyànshū ba!	Finish your meal and then study!
Wǒ hwéile jyā dzài gěi nǐ dǎ dyànhwà.	I will go home, and then I will call you on the phone.
Wǒmen dàu nèr dzài shwō ba!	Let us talk about it after we have arrived there.
Nǐ syěwán dż dzài chyù, hǎu bùhǎu?	How about finishing the writing of the characters before you go?

When dzài is used to show the sequence of two actions, it is placed before the verb of the second action. Such words as syān (first) or děng (wait) is often used in the clause of the first action.

Nǐ syān chyù, wǒ dzài chyù.	You go first, then I will go.
Wǒmen syān hē yidyǎr chá, dzài chr̄fàn.	We will have some tea before we eat.

Dĕng tā láile wŏmen dzài shwō.	Wait until he comes before we talk about it.
Dĕng sz̄jī láile, dzài shàng chē.	Wait until the driver comes before we get in the car.

Translate the following:

1) I plan to go to San Francisco again tomorrow.

2) Why don't you discuss it with your wife first before you buy it?

3) I went to see her yesterday, and I will go and see her again tomorrow.

4) Wait until he has gone before we go.

5) I will go shopping first and then go home.

2. Lái and chyù as resultative verb endings

Lái or chyù can be used as endings in resultative verbs.

nálai	bring here
chūchyu	go out

Some directional endings may take lái or chyù, and they together form directional endings.

náshanglai	bring up here	náshangchyu	take up there
bānsyalai	move down there	bānsyachyu	move down there
păujīnlai	run in here	păujīnchyu	run in there
sùngchulai	send out here	sùngchuchyu	send out there
fēihweilai	fly back here	fēihweichyu	fly back there
dzŏugwolai	walk over here	dzŏugwochyu	walk over there
náchĭlai	pick up	(NEVER náchichyu)	

When a verb has the directional ending lái or chyù and the verb has an object, the verb is split, with lái or chyù put after the object.

Chĭng nĭ bāngwo jèige jwōdz lai.	Please move this table here.
Tāmen dōu náchi shū laile.	They have all picked up their books.
Chĭng nĭ syĕchu míngdz lai.	Please write out your name.

Syǎuháidz dōu pǎujin wūdzli chyule.	All the children have run into the room.
Shéi ywànyi náchu chyán lai?	Who wishes to put up the money?

Translate the following:

1) This mountain is too high. I can't walk up.

2) This table is not too big. I can move it out.

3) Four airplanes have flown back.

4) Mr. Wáng has arrived. Let us walk over there.

5) Please go upstairs and carry a chair down here.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

The uses of dzài

請你再說一個 gù 事.	Please tell another story.
我買了東西再去吃飯.	I'll go to eat after I've bought the things.
你現在先吃一點兒.他們來了你再跟他們一塊兒吃.	Have (eat) some first. Later when they came, you can eat again with them.

Examples:

1) 要是他再來,我就要對他不客氣了.	If he comes again, I will no longer be polite to him.
2) 你們看見他的時候再跟他說吧.	Tell him when you (next) see him.
3) 我們先去買點兒táng再到他家,好不好?	How about going to buy some candy before going to his house.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Wǒmen dàule Nyǒuywē dzài gěi nǐ dǎ dyànhwà.

2) Nǐ syǐhwan chr̄ jyòu dzài chr̄ yìdyǎr ba.

3) Wǒ yàu syān hē yìdyǎr jyǒu dzài chr̄fàn.

4) Tāmen dǎswan jyēhwūn yǐhòu dzài yíkwàr dàu Měigwo lái.

5) Kūngjūngsyáujye méitīngjyan nǐde hwà. Nǐ dzài wèn tā syàndzài wǒmen dàule shémma dìfang.

6) Wǒ syǎng màile jèige jyòu chē dzài mǎi syīn chē.

7) Jèige fàngwǎrde fàn jēn bútswò. Yòu pyányi, yòu hǎuchī. Wǒmen shémma shŕhou dzài lái?

8) Nǐ kànle nèiběn shū yǐhòu dzài chyù gēn ta tán.

9) Dàule nèr dzài syōusyi ba.

10) Wǒ wènchīngchule, dzài syángsyì gàusung nǐ.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) You take this one, I will buy another one.

2) When the airline stewardess comes around again, you tell her what you want.

3) You study first before you go to play.

4) I want to buy a little first. If it is good, I will buy more.

5) Someone called you when you were not home. He said he would call you again.

6) Wait until he has finished his work before we ask him to go on a trip with us.

7) Why don't you ask him to come first and then tell him this news.

8) You said that they did not like you. Why do you want to go there again?

9) Can you wait until I finish reading this book before we go?

10) We will talk about it when the time comes.

Pattern 2

Resultative endings lái and chyù

這個 gāngchín 太大, 門太小, bān不進去.	This piano is too large, the door is too small, it can't go through.

Examples:

1) 請你把我買的菜都拿進來.	Please bring in all the groceries that I bought.
2) 門關着呢.小孩兒跑不出去.	The door is closed. The children can't run out.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Wǒ syǎngbuchiláí tā syìng shémma.

2) Jèige shān gāujíle. Méiyou ren shàngdechyù.

3) Yàushr wǒmen syàndzài chyù mǎi dūngsyi, wǎnfàn yǐchyán hwéidelái ma?

4) Tā bǎ kèren sùngchuchyu yǐhòu shwō:"Màndzǒu, màndzǒu."

5) Nèige wūdz lǐtoude rén tài dwōle. Nǐ syàndzài jìnbuchyu.

6) Tā náchilai yíge chábēi jyòu rēngdàu chwānghu wàitou chyùle.

7) Dzwótyan wǒ kànjyan nèige rén dzài nǐ jyā ménkǒur dzǒugwolái dzǒugwochyù. Wǒ wèn tā shr̀ bushr jǎu nǐ, tā shwō:"Búshr."

8) Jèige hwáng fēijī měityan dzǎushang fēichuchyu, wǎnshang fēihweilai.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Please move that table into this room.

2) Who is upstairs? Would you go up and see.

3) As soon as I saw him, I walked over to talk to him.

4) They all came in and sat a while, and then left for San Francisco.

5) I bought the gifts for them, but I have not sent them out yet.

6) You can now take the apples out of your pockets.

7) Who said that this table could not be moved out? I just moved out a table of this size.

8) Last night after he had had a few drinks, he told us a lot of things we did not know.

Homework

A. Story:

Lǐ Shŕ Syáujye shr yíwei kūngjūngsyáujye. Tā dàugwo hěn dwō dìfang. Tā shwō syàndzàide fēijī hěn ānchywán, yě hěn shūfu. Dzài fēijīshang chr̄fàn, hē jyǒu, kàn dyànyǐngr dōu gēn dzài kètīngli yíyàng. Jyòushr fēijī méiyou yóule, yě kéyi dzài kūngjūng jyā yóu, búbì jyànglwò yǐhòu dzài jyā. Dzwèi syīnshr̀de fēiji fēicháng kwài. Tsúng Nyǒuywē dàu Jyòujīnshān sžwǔge jūngtóu jyòu gòule. Yīnwei fēijī hěn kwài, ràng wǒmen jywéde shr̀jyè jēn shr bǐ yǐchyán syǎudwōle.

B. Answer the following questions:

1) Kūngjūngsyáujye syìng shémma?

2) Syàndzàide fēijī shūfu ma?

3) Fēijī jyā yóu yídìng yàu jyànglwò ma?

4) Kūngjūngsyáujye dzwò shémma shr̀?

5) Tsúng Nyǒuywē dàu Jyòujīnshān yǒu dwōshau lǐ?

6) Dzwò fēijī ānchywán ma?

7) Lǐ Syáujye dàugwo shémma dìfang?

8) Syàndzàide shr̀jyè bùgēn yǐchyán yíyàng dà ma?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.361-368)

361.	槍	chyāng	N: rifle, small arms	手槍	- pistol, revolver
	鎗			kăbin槍	- carbine
	(枪)			步槍	- rifle
				jī關槍	- machine gun
				chīngjī槍	- light machine gun
				jùngjī槍	- heavy machine gun
362.	步	bù	BF/M: step, pace	步兵	- infantry man
				步槍	- rifle
363.	炮	pàu	N: gun, artillery	炮兵	- artillery (arm or units)
	砲				
	礮			炮彈	- artillery shells
				大炮	- big guns
				戰fáng炮	- antitank gun
				高shè炮	- antiaircraft gun

				yě戰炮	- field piece
364.	士	shr̀	BF: soldier(lit)	士gwān長	- master sergeant
				上士	- sergeant first class
				中士	- sergeant
				下士	- corporal
365.	尉	wèi	BF:	上尉	- captain
				中尉	- first lieutenant
				少尉	- second lieutenant
				[jwǔn 尉	- warrant officer]
366.	將	jyàng	BF: general	上將	- general
				中將	- lieutenant general
				少將	- major general
				jwǔn 將	- brigadier general

367.	敵	dí	BF: enemy	敵人	- enemy
368.	戰 战	jàn	BF: war,battle	戰車	- tank
				戰事	- warfare
				戰fú	- prisoner of war
				戰fáng炮	- antitank gun
				世界大戰	- world war
				作戰	- make war, combat

L. 62

B. 句子

1. 你是步兵，還是砲兵？
2. 我是步兵．
3. 你有步槍嗎？
4. 我有．是昨天李上士給我的．
5. 誰叫他給你的？
6. 張中尉叫李上士給我的．
7. 你那年才可以有上將的jyēji 呢？
8. 我不知道．我就希望能有上校的jyēji
   就行了．
9. 跟敵人作戰的時候，你是甚麼jyēji ？
10. 我是少尉．
11. 一位lyǔ 客告訴 kūng 中小姐：「我的ānchywán
    帶壞了，怎麼辦？」
12. 步兵先學怎麼用步槍，再學怎麼用jī
    關槍．
13. 第二次世界大戰，我們在敵人上kūng
    照 syàng ，危險極了．

14. 這門大砲太 jùng，無論誰，一個人 bān 不
    下來．

15. 對yu 那件事，我不能幫你，你去求求
    李少將吧

C. Gù 事

有一個笑話，說從前有一個小國．在作戰的時候，有一位上將，要想知道敵人有多少軍 dwèi，所以他就把一位中將找來，想問問他．

那位中將也不知道．就去找一位少將來問問；可是那位少將也不知道，就去找一位上校．

上校找中校，中校找少校，少校找上尉，上尉找中尉，中尉找少尉，少尉找士 gwān 長．找了有五六天，誰都一點兒都不知道．

L. 62

正在你找我，我找你的時候，敵人有一團步兵，兩營砲兵過來了．

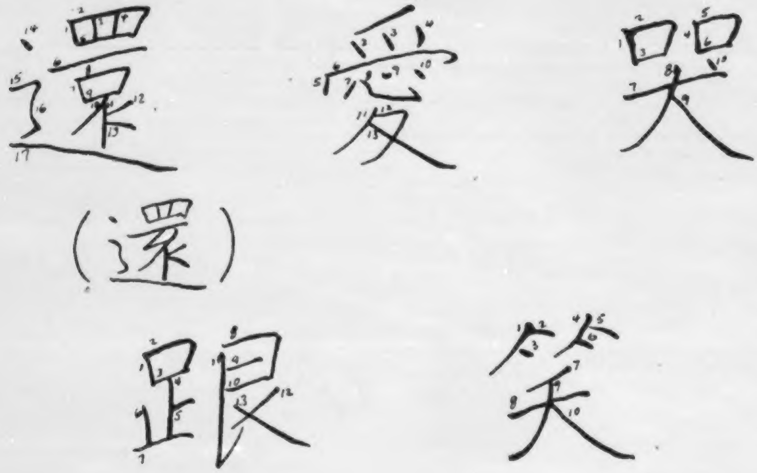
並且敵人的那團步兵都有最新的步槍，那營砲兵也都有最新的大砲，所以這個小國很快的就 bèi 敵人打 bài 了．

雖然這就是一個笑話，可是，從這個笑話我們可以知道，在作戰的時候，敵人有多少軍 dwèi，老得知道的很清楚．要不然真是危險極了．

第一，要知道敵人有多少軍 dwèi．第二，要知道他們都是甚麼軍 dwèi．第三，要知道那些軍 dwèi 都在甚麼地方．第四，要知道敵人甚麼地方有砲，甚麼地方有 jí-關槍．要是能知道的很清楚，就好了．

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 236-240)



B. Radicals

1. 辶 (stop and go, 162) as in: 還
2. 心 (heart. 61) as in: 愛
3. 口 (mouth, 30) as in: 哭
4. 𧾷 (foot, 157) as in: 跟
5. ⺮ (bamboo, 118) as in: 笑

L. 62

C. Dictionary Drill

Review on Sixty Common Chinese Radicals

Of these sixty common Chinese radicals, fifty-two can be individual characters themselves, although the forms they appear as individual characters may be somewhat different from the forms they appear as radicals, such as 阝(阜) and 阝(邑). There are eight which do not form individual characters by themselves. They are:

疒(病), 虫(蟲), 彳, 辶(辵),
艹(草), 宀, 广, 囗.

1. Exercise: Identify the radicals and find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Radical	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
倉			
努			
唯			
尾			
痘			
姿			
綾			
聘			
愧			
跪			
犄			
擔			
蟄			

	Radical	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
睫			
脈			
獄			
復			
敢			
祧			
餅			
戰			
鷺			
欺			
邈			
暑			
駿			
梨			
淡			
堿			
鰐			

2. Home Work: Identify the radicals and find from dictionary the Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Radical	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
燥			
私			
瑪			
節			
菊			
緞			
郡			
割			
留			
醋			
宮			
庫			
硝			
盜			
錄			
陋			
需			
孺			
幃			
閩			
衲			
輜			
究			
詠			

LESSON 63

I. Military Subject

有一位美國Hwáng上尉到中國營chyū去tsāngwān, 中國的李中尉跟他談話：

Hwáng:	我看了看你們的營chyū所有的營房,tsāngkù都很乾淨.	I looked through your post. Everything in the barracks and depots was very clean.
李	謝謝.別客氣.我想你們美國營chyū一定比我們更乾淨	Thank you. You are polite. I think your posts in America must be even cleaner than ours.
Hwáng:	請問,現在你們的兵都在外頭站dwèi,是作甚麽呢?	May I ask, what are your soldiers doing as they now all stand in formation outside?
李	要chwēi jyàngchihàu了,所以他們都得站dwèi.	It is about time for retreat, therefore they all have to stand in formation.
Hwáng:	你們甚麽時候shēngchí?	What time do you raise the flag?
李	早上六點鐘.	Six o'clock in the morning.

Hwáng:	你們甚麼時候起chwáng呢？	What time do you get up?
李:	禮拜一到禮拜六都是五點半起chwáng.	We get up at half past five Monday through Friday.
Hwáng:	起chwáng的時候有hàu兵chwēi預備hàu麼?	Does the bugler sound the first call at getting up time?
李:	對了我們還用hàu兵chwēi預備hàu. 聽說你們已經不用hàu兵了，是麼?	That's right. We have a bugler to sound the first call. I heard that you no longer use buglers, is it true?
Hwáng:	是的. 我們現在用lyóushēngjǐ dàitì了hàu兵.	That's right. We are now using phonographs to take the place of buglers.
李	你們syīdēnghàu也用lyóushēngjǐ dàitì hàu兵麼?	Do you also use phonographs to replace buglers for taps?
Hwáng:	對了、你們營chyū裏甚麼時候syīdēng?	That's right. What time do you turn the lights out at your post?

李:	晚上九點鐘 syídēng. 所以他們差不多睡八個鐘頭的覺.	Lights are turned off at nine o'clock in the evening. Therefore the soldiers have about eight hours of sleep.
Hwáng:	你們 shēngchí 的時候也站 dwèi 麼 ?	Do you stand in formation for raising the flag?
李:	是的. Shēngchí 的時候要站 dwèi, 也要點名. 要是那天有甚麼要緊的事情就在那個時候告訴所有的人.	Yes, we do for raising the flag, and we also have a roll call. If there is anything important for that day, that is the time we inform all the men.
Hwáng:	Shēngchí 的時候也 chwēihàu 麼 ?	Is there a bugle call for raising the flag?
李:	我們 shēngchí 的時候, hàu 兵要 chwēi 早點 hàu. Jyàngchí 的時候 chwēi	When we raise the flag, the bugler will sound the reveille. And when we lower the flag, the bugler will

L. 63 jyàngchihàu. sound the retreat.

Hwáng:	你們shēngchí的時候syàng着你們的國chí jìng禮麼?	Do you salute the flag when you raise it?
李:	手裏沒有槍的時候行jyǔ手jìng禮.	When we are not carrying rifles, we do the hand salute.
Hwáng:	要是有槍的時候呢?	How do you salute when you are carrying rifles?
李:	有槍的時候行jyǔ槍jìng禮.	When we are carrying rifles, we present arm.
Hwáng:	你們在屋子裏行甚麼禮?	How do you salute in the room?
李:	在屋子裏的時候要行jyǔ手jìng禮.	When we are in the room, we do the hand salute.
Hwáng:	你們軍dwèi跟我們美國軍dwèi一樣jìng禮.你們的兵對在	Your troops and our American troops salute the same way. Do your soldiers salute officers who are in cars?

	汽車裏的軍gwān jǐng-禮麼？	
李:	得jǐng禮.	Yes, they do.
Hwáng:	要是你們的兵在汽車裏對在外頭的軍gwān jǐng禮麼？	If your soldiers are in cars, do they salute officers outside?
李:	我們的兵很少有汽車.	Our soldiers very seldom have cars.
	(Hàu兵chwēi jyàngchíhàu了. Hwáng上尉跟李中尉都在那兒syàng着國chí jǐng禮.)	(A bugler is sounding the retreat. Both Captain Hwáng and Lt.Lǐ salute the flag where they are.)

II. Interpretation Exercise

一個美國上士李文,問一個中國戰fú 王大中問tí. 有人給他們fānyì.

Q:	你姓甚麼?	What is your last name?
A:	姓Mǎ.	"Mǎ".
Q:	你叫甚麼?	What is your first name?
A:	叫可夫.	"Kěfū".
Q:	你在你bùdwèi裏頭當甚麼?	What is your job in your unit?
A:	當hàu兵.	Bugler.
Q:	你是甚麼jyēji?	What is your rank?
A:	下士.	Corporal.
Q:	在那連當hàu兵?	In which company were you a bugler?
A:	在第一營的第三連.	Third Company, First Battalion.
Q:	我們fúlwǒ你的時候,你作甚麼呢?	What were you doing when we captured you?
A:	我們連長說,你們快來gūngjī我們了.我就跑到用wěijwāng-	Our company commander said you were about to attack us, so I hurried to our fortifications which were

	wǎng wěijwāng好的 fángyù 工事 那兒 去,還 沒跑到 就 bèi 你們 fúlwǒ 了.	camouflaged by camouflage nets. I was captured before I got there.
Q:	你 bèi fúlwǒ 的 時候 帶了些甚麽 wǔchì?	What weapons were you carrying when you were captured?
A:	我就 帶了一 jr 步槍.	I was carrying only a rifle.
Q:	你們的 連長 姓 甚麽? 叫 甚麽?	What is the full name of your company commander?
A:	我 不願意 告訴 你們.	I don't want to tell you.
Q:	你 當了 幾年 hàu 兵 了?	How many years have you been a bugler?
A:	Jěng 三年 了.	Exactly three years.
Q:	你 jěng 天 chwēihàu麽?	Do you blow a bugle all day?
A:	不,還 作 別的 事情.	No. I have other duties to attend to.

L. 63

Q: 你都會 chwēi 甚麼？	What calls can you blow?
A: 預備 hàu, syīdēnghàu, 吃飯 hàu, 我都會 chwēi.	First call, taps, mess call. I know them all.
Q: 早點 hàu 跟 jyàngchíhàu 你也會 chwēi 麼？	Do you know reveille and retreat?
A: 也會. 差不多天天 chwēi-的 hàu 我都會.	I can do those too. I know almost all the everyday calls.
Q: 聽說你們現在不用 hàu 兵了, 是麼？	I heard that they don't use buglers anymore, is that right?
A: 在營 chyū 裏的時候不用 hàu 兵了, 可是打 jàn-的時候還得有 hàu-兵.	In the fort, we don't use buglers anymore. In combat we still use buglers.
Q: 你們在營 chyū 裏的時候用甚麼 dàitì hàu 兵？	What do you use in the fort as a substitute for buglers?
A: 我們用 lyóushēngjī dàitì hàu 兵.	We use phonographs as substitutes for buglers.

Q: 你知道不知道打jàng的時候當hàu兵的最wéisyǎn?	Do you know that in combat a bugler's job is most dangerous?
A: 我不怕wéisyǎn, 要是怕wéisyǎn就不能打jàng了.	I am not afraid of danger. If I were afraid of danger, I would not be able to fight.
Q: 在你們現在的營地有多少bùdwèi?	How many troops do you have now in your camp?
A: 我不能告訴你.	I cannot tell you.
Q: 都有甚麼bùdwèi?	What kinds of troops do you have?
A: 我也不能告訴你們. 有甚麼口jìng火炮, 有甚麼戰車, 我都不能告訴你們. 你們不要問了.	I cannot tell you either. Nor can I tell you the calibers of the cannons we use or what tanks we have. You'd better not ask any more.
Q: 你能告訴我們甚麼呢?	What can you tell us?
A: 我應當告訴你們的, 已經	I have told you all

都告訴你們了.	that I should tell you.
Q: 我們現在給你好東西吃,好地方住,你應當多告訴我們一點兒.	Now we give you good food to eat, good quarters to stay in, you should tell us a little more.
A: 我還可以告訴你我們的兵都會jìng禮;我們都shòu過很好的syùnlyan.	I can also tell you all our soldiers know how to salute; and we all had very good training.
Q: 在屋子外頭怎麼jìng禮?	How do you salute outside the room?
A: 有槍的時候行jyǔ槍jìng禮,沒有槍的時候行jyǔ手jìng禮.	When we carry rifles, we present arms; and when we don't carry rifles, we do the hand salute.
Q: 你swéi然很會說,可是那不是我們要知道的.你先回去想想,明天你得告訴我們你們	Although you have explained things very well, those are not what we want to know. Go back and do some thinking first; tomorrow you will have to tell

都有甚麼軍dwèi,在甚麼地方.	us what troops you have and where they are.
A: 好.明天見.	Fine. I will see you tomorrow.

L. 63

Vocabulary

198.	chǐchwáng	起床	V:	get up
198.1	yùbèihàu	預備號	N:	first call
199.	chīfànhàu	吃飯號	N:	mess call
200.	dàitì	代替	V:	in place of, instead of
201.	dzǎudyǎnhàu	早點號	N:	reveille
202.	gwóchí	國旗	N:	national flag
202.1	chídz	旗子	N:	flag
203.	hàu	號	N:	bugle
203.1	hàubīng	號兵	N:	bugler
203.2	chwēihàu	吹號	VO:	blow the bugle
204.	hwǒpàu	火炮	N:	cannon
205.	jěng	整	SV/A:	be whole/exactly
205.1	jěngtyān	整天	(MA) N:	a whole day
206.	jìnglǐ	敬禮	VO:	salute
206.1	jyǔchyāngjìnglǐ	舉槍	N:	present arms
206.2	jyǔshǒujìnglǐ	舉手	N:	hand salute
207.	jyàngchí	降旗	VO:	lower the flag
207.1	jyàngchíhàu	降旗號	N:	retreat
208.	kǒujìng	口徑	N:	caliber
209.	lyóushēngjī	留聲機	N:	record player
210.	shēngchí	升旗	VO:	raise the flag
211.	syīdēng	熄燈	VO:	lights out
211 1	syīdēnghàu	熄燈號	N:	taps
212.	syínglǐ	行禮	VO:	salute
212.1	syíng	行	V:	execute (a salute)
213.	wěijwāng	偽裝	V/N:	camouflage
213.1	wěijwāngwǎng	偽裝網	N:	camouflage net
214.	yíngdì	營地	N:	camp (temporary)

III. Grammatical Analysis

1. Measures

The following four points should be observed in using the measures:

1.1 When there are a specifier and a numeral before a measure, the specifier should be put before the numeral.

jèi sānge sywésheng	these three students
nèi sānben shū	those three books

1.2 A measure is directly annexed to the specifier or the numeral.

jèige sywésheng	this student
sānben shū	three books

a. If there is no number appearing before the measure, the number yī is understood. It often appears in these forms:

Following a specifier: jèige (jèiyige), měityān (měi yityān), etc.
Following a verb: Wǒ you (yi) ge péngyou. Wǒ yau mài (yi) ben shū.

b. A few stative verbs may be inserted between the number and the measure, the most frequently used ones being dà, syǎu, and jěng:

yídàběn (shū)	a big book
sānsyǎukwài (yídz)	three small pieces of soap
sžjěngjāng (jř)	four whole pieces of paper

1.3 There are a few nouns which possess in themselves the nature or function of the measure, and therefore do not require measures when they are preceded by numerals or specifiers.

yìnyán	one year
jèikè	this lesson
sāntyān	three days

1.4 When the person or thing denoted by the noun is already clearly defined in the context, the noun after the measure may be omitted.

Nèige Měigwo rén shr sywésheng, jèige (Měigwo rén) shr syānsheng.
That American is a student, this (American) is a teacher.

2. The general measure ge, is applicable to most nouns even when a more appropriate measure is available. Since things of different shape, nature, number, size, weight or volume require specific measures, they may have specific meanings:

yìběn shū	a book
yítàu shū	a set of books
yìshwāng wàdz	a pair of socks
yìdá wàdz	a dozen pairs of socks

Note that meaning is differentiated entirely by the measure. When a measure is used with one noun only or with a limited group of nouns, the noun itself is frequently omitted, since no confusion is likely to arise:

Nèisānběn wǒ dōu mǎile.	(definitely refers to books)
Dzwótyān láile sānwèi.	(definitely refers to people)

Exercise

Give an appropriate specific measure (not ge) to every noun and translate:

bùchyāng
chādz
chyānbǐ
chwán
fàn
fēijī
gūnggùng-chìchē
hé
hwà
hwār
hwàr
jànchē

jī
jīgwānchyāng
jř
jyē
kùdz
kwàidz
lù
myànbāu
nyóu
pídài
shānpàu
shr̀ching

shù
shwādz
syānsheng
syé
syìn
syíngli
tsài
yǎnjing
yú

3. The following reference table contains the more important specific measures:

TERM	MEANING AND USE	EXAMPLES
BǍ 把	to grasp - M. of things that are grasped	yìbǎ yǐdz a chair yìbǎ dāudz a knife yìbǎ chādz a fork yìbǎ sháur a spoon yìbǎ chř a ruler yìbǎ shǒuchyāng a pistol
BĀU 包	to wrap - M. of things that are wrapped up	yìbāu yān a pack of cigarettes

TERM	MEANING AND USE	EXAMPLES
BĚN 本	volume - M. of books; cf. tàu	yìběn shū a book
BÙ 部	section, class - M. of books	yìbù shū a literary work
CHŘ 尺	foot (measure)	yìchř bù a foot of cloth yìchř cháng a foot long
DÁ 打	dozen	yìdá jīdàn a dozen eggs yìdá wàdz a dozen pairs of socks or stockings
DWÙN 頓	time, a pause - M. for meals, blows	yídwùn fàn a meal dǎ tā yídwùn give him a beating
DWǑ 朶	cluster - M. for flowers	yìdwǒ hwār a flower
DYǍN 點	o'clock; hour	yìdyǎn jūng one o'clock; one hour
FĒN 分	minute; cent	yìfēn jūng one minute yìfēn chyán one cent
FĒNG 封	envelope	yìfēng syìn a letter
GÈ 個	general measure	yíge syǎuhár a child
GĒN 根	root, origin - M. for long, slender things	yìgēn yān a cigarette yìgēn yánghwǒ a match
HÀU 號	M. for room, house, telephone numbers, days of the month, hats, socks, shoes, clothing, etc.	yíhàu No. 1 yíywè yíhàu Jan. 1st báhàu(r) syé size 8 shoes shŕwǔhàu(r) bàn chènshān 15 1/2 shirts
HÉ(R) 盒	small box	yìhé(r) táng a box of candy yìhé(r) yánghwǒ a box of matches
HWÉI 回	time, occasion	yìhwéi once

TERM	MEANING AND USE	EXAMPLES
JĀNG 張	M. for certain flat, sheet-like items	yìjāng jř a sheet of paper yìjāng hwàr a picture yìjāng jwōdz a table
JR̄ 隻	one of a pair; single - M. for birds, boats, certain animals, etc.	yìjr̄ jī a chicken yìjr̄ yǎn an eye yìjr̄ chwán a boat yìjr̄ shǒu a hand yìjr̄ jyǎu a foot
JǓNG 種	kind, sort	jèijǔng rén this kind of people jèijǔng pínggwǒ this kind of apple
JYÀ 架	frame, rack	yíjyà fēijī an airplane
JYĀN 間	M. for rooms	wǔjyān wūdz five rooms lyǎngjyān wòfáng two bedrooms
JYÀN 件	article	yíjyàn shr̀ a metter yíjyàn yīshang an article of clothing yíjyàn syíngli a piece of luggage yíjyàn dūngsyi a thing
JYÙ 句	sentence	yíjyù hwà a sentence
KĒ 棵	M. for trees, plants	yìkē shù a tree
KÈ 刻	quarter hour	yíkè jūng 15 minutes
KÈ 課	lesson	yíkè (shū) one lesson dìyíkè lesson one
KWÀI 塊	piece, lump - M. for anything dealt with in "pieces"	yíkwài dì a piece of land yíkwài chyán a dollar yíkwài bù a piece of cloth

TERM	MEANING AND USE	EXAMPLES
LǏ 里	M. for Chinese lǐ (about 1/3 mile)	yìlǐ one lǐ dzǒule yìlǐ lù walked one lǐ
LYÀNG 輛	M. for vehicles except airplanes	**yílyàng chē a cart** **yílyàng chìchē a motor car**
MÁU 毛	dime - M. for ten cents	**yìmáu chyán ten cents**
MÉN 門	M. for school subjects, learning, artillery	yìmén sywéwen a field of learning yìmén gūngke a school subject sānmén pàu three canons
NYÁN 年	year	yìnyán a year
PÁN(DZ) 盤	plate, dish	yìpán tsài a plate of food
SHWĀNG 雙	pair	yìshwāng wàdz a pair of socks or stockings yìshwāng syé a pair of shoes yìshwāng kwàidz a pair of chopsticks
SWÈI 歲	year of age	yíswèi one year old
SWǑ(R) 所	M. for house, building	yìswǒ(r) fángdz a house yìswǒ(r) lóu a building
SYÀ(R) 下	M. for times	dǎ tā yísyà(r) hit him once dǎtīngle yísyà(r) checked once gàusung ta yísyà(r) let him know
TÁNG 堂	hall, class - M. for class periods	yìtáng lìshř a class period of history
TÀNG 趟	time - M. for trips	yítàng a trip Nǐ chyùgwo jǐtàng? How many times have you been there?
TÀU 套	covering, set	yítàu shū a set of books yítàu yīshang a suit of clothes yítàu jyājyu a set of furniture

L. 63

TERM	MEANING AND USE	EXAMPLES
TSZ̀ 次	time, occasion	sāntsz̀ three times
TYĀN 天	day	yìtyān a day
TYÁU 條	strip, branch - M. for long, slender things; cf. gān	yìtyáu lù a road yìtyáu jyē a street yìtyáu hé a river yìtyáu yú a fish
WǍN 碗	bowl	yìwǎn fàn a bowl of rice yìwǎn shwěi a bowl of water
WÈI 位	seat, position - polite M. for persons	yíwèi syānsheng a gentleman yíwèi kèren a guest yíwèi tàitai a lady yíwèi syáujye a young lady
YÀNG 樣	kind, sort	lyǎngyàng(r) dyǎnsyin two kinds of refreshments jèiyàng(r) tyānchi this kind of weather
YÈ 夜	night	sāntyān sānyè three days and nights
YĪNGLǏ 英里	mile (lit.Eng.lǐ)	yìyīnglǐ one mile

353

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Measures

這個人是 lyánlwò 軍 gwān.	This person is a liaison officer.
這三個人都是 jyà-shřywán.	All three of these persons are pilots.
這一大 wǎn飯多少錢?	How much for this large bowl of rice?

Examples:

1) 那位 kūng中小姐從前在我們學校念書.	That air hostesss used to study at our school.
2) 那五本書我們都念了.	We've studied all those five books.
3) 那個工人 gwǎn jyā yóu.	That laborer is in charge of filling gas.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into English orally:

1) Wǒ sùnggěile tā yìpíng syāngshwěi.

2) Jèige pínggwo jēn dà a!

3) Wǔbaijāng syìnjř mài sānkwai chyán.

4) Nèijāng syàngpyār shr shémma shŕhou jàude?

5) Nǐ yàu mǎi jǐjāng dānchéngpyàu, jǐjāng láihwéi pyàu?

6) Nǐmen bǎ yìpán jájī dou chr̄le ma?

7) Nèityáu lù buhǎudzǒu, syǎusyin yidyǎr.

8) Kètīngde shāfā shr̀ syīnde.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) This toothpaste has candy flavor, therefore my children like to use it.

2) He bought three pairs of black shoes and half a dozen pairs of black socks.

3) After they came back from hiking, they had a hearty meal in the kitchen.

4) How many courses will you take this summer?

5) The fastest airplanes travel two thousand miles an hour.

6) How old is she?

7) He smokes a pack of cigarettes every day.

8) I have met him once.

c. Fill in the following blanks with proper measures: (use reference table on pp. **346-350**)

1) Yì.........wàdz wǔmáu chyán. Yì......wàdz lyòukwài chyán.

2) Wǒ tsái mǎile yì.......syīn jyājyu.

3) Dzài nèi.....lùshang yǒu lyǎng....jànchē.

4) Tā dzwótyan syěle wǔ.....syìn.

5) Jwōdz shàngtoude nèi....hwār shr shéide?

6) Chǐng nǐ hēle jèi....jyǒu dzài dzǒu.

7) Tā shwōle yí......hwà, kěshr wǒ méitīngjyan.

8) Yí.....syǎu fēijī bāchyān.....chyán búswàn tài gwèi.

d) Give the proper measures for the following nouns:

1) jī
2) yídz
3) sháur
4) yánghwo
5) yú
6) kèren
7) syānsheng
8) gūngke
9) lóu
10) wòfáng
11) shù
12) táng
13) tāng
14) yān
15) jīdàn

Homework

A. Story

Dzài yíngchyū měityan dōu tīngjyan chwēihàude shēngyin. Tsúngchyán dōu shr hàubīng chwēihàu, syàndzài yùng lyóushēngjī le. Gèjùngde hàushēng dōu bùyiyàng. Wǒ gāngdàu yíngchyūde shŕhou tīngbuchulái hàushēngde yìsz. Yǒu shŕhou nùngtswòle. Tīngjyan yùbeihàu jyòu chyu chr̄fàn. Syàwǔde hàu yǒu jyàngchíhàu. Wǎnshang yǒu syídēnghàu. Shéngchí gēn jyàngchíde shŕhou, yàushr nǐ dzai gwóchíde fùjìn, dōu děi dwèije gwóchí jìnglǐ.

B. Answer the following questions:

1) Dzài nǎr kéyi tīngjyan chwēihàude shēngyin?
2) Kéyi tīngjyan shémma hàushēng?
3) Shémma shŕhou chwēi syídēnghàu?
4) Syàndzài chwēihàu yùng hàubīng ma?
5) Yùbeihàu shr shémma yìsz?
6) Tīngjyan shémma hàu yàu jìnglǐ?
7) Nǐ měityan chǐchwáng yǐhòu dzwò shémma?
8) Syīnbīng yitīng hàushēng jyòu jr̄dau shr shémma hàu ma?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos.369-375)

369.	黃	hwáng	SV: yellow	黃chyān筆	yellow pencil
				黃紙	yellow paper
				黃花	yellow flower
370.	或	hwò	BF: or	或是	either, or; whether
371.	像 (象)	syàng	V/N: like, resemble; photograph	他很像你	he resembles you
				像片兒	snapshot
				照像	take pictures
				照像jī	camera
372.	片 片	pyàn	BF: card,slices	片兒	slices
				像片兒	snapshot

373.	鐵 鉄	tyě	N: iron	鐵路 - railroad
374.	馬	mǎ	N: horse	馬車 - horse-cart 馬língshǔ - potato chí 馬 - horseback riding
375.	讓 (訁上)	ràng	CV/V: by (indicates agent); allow, let/ yield	讓他去 - let him go 讓他吃了 - eaten by him

L. 63

B. 句子 (溫習) (wēnsyí - review)

1. 這兩張像片兒，你喜歡那張？

2. 這張有火車，也有鐵路的.

3. 你為甚麼不喜歡那張呢？

4. 那張你chī的馬，是黑的，所以我不喜歡.

5. 你喜歡甚麼的？

6. 黃的或是白的，都喜歡，就不喜歡黑的.

7. 要是讓你去買馬，你買甚麼的？

8. 讓我去買，我買黃的.

9. 第二次世界大戰，恐怕一共死了幾千萬人.

10. 我的無syàndyàn 就有一尺長，六寸高，不算大.

11. 站在大砲旁邊的那些中國陸軍，每人帶着一jr 槍.

12. 春天到了，太太小姐們把冬天的衣shang

收起來了.

13. 王中將説戰車好像一pǐ鐵馬, 作戰的時候真有用.

14. 他預備介紹給你的那位小姐的像片, 我看見過.

15. 我們希望今年秋天到舊jǐn山去休息兩個禮拜.

16. 黃團長公事真忙, 風景那麼好, 他都沒看, 在車上老看書.

17. 那封信裏説的很清楚, 你的護照讓工兵營營長拿走了.

18. 營長, 連長, 或者排長, 不論jyěji多麼高的軍gwān, 作起戰來, 都有危險.

19. 敵人的步兵穿的很壞. 秋天一到, 天氣就要冷了, 他們怎麼能作戰?

20. 明天我請您吃午飯, 兩個人談談, 那個飯館兒不但很近, 並且也乾淨.

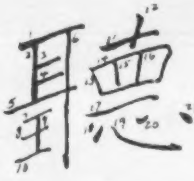
21. 張下士剛才求李少尉別再叫他開汽車,

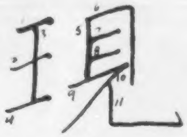
L. 63

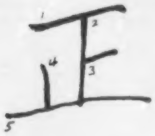
因為這幾天太熱了.

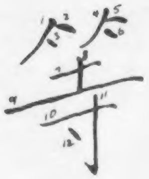
VI. WRITING

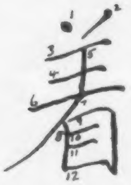
A. Writing (Characters 241-245)











B. Radicals

1. 耳 (ear, 128) as in: 聽
2. 玉 (jade, 96) as in: 現
3. 止 (shop, 77) as in: 正
4. ⺮ (bamboo, 118) as in: 等
5. 目 (eye, 109) as in: 着

VOCABULARY INDEX

A

			LESSON
ānchywán	N/SV:	safety/safe	62
ānchywándài	N:	safety belt	62

B

báitsài	N:	cabbage (Chinese)	54
bàn gūng(shr)	VO:	transact official business	61
bāuwéi	V:	encircle, surround, hem in, blockade	55
bǎusyǎn	SV/VO:	safe/buy insurance;guarantee	58
bǎusyǎndāu	N:	safety razor	58
bǎuyǎng	V/N:	keep maintenance/maintenance	59
bàudàu	V:	report for duty	59
bàugàu	V/N:	report	59
bèi	CV:	by (sign of passive)	55
bìděi	A:	must	54
bwōlibēi	N:	glass, tumbler	56
bwōtsài	N:	spinach	53
bwódz	N:	neck	56

C

chá	V:	check, investigate, look into	60
chápyàude	N:	conductor (on bus or train)	60
chábēi	N:	teacup	56
cháhú	N:	teapot	56
cháng	V:	taste	54
chángdwǎn	N:	the length	56
chēfáng	N:	garage	52
chéng	V:	to fill (a dish with rice, soup, etc.)	56
chíbùdzǒu	V/N:	quick time march	59
chídz	N:	flag	63
chǐchwáng	V:	get up	63
chǐfēi	V:	take off (airplane)	62
chìchē jíyùngchǎng	N:	motor pool	59
chìyóu	N:	gasoline	52
chīngtsài	N:	green vegetables	53
chǐngchyóu	V/N:	request	61
chǐngwèn	IE:	may I ask? may I inquire?	60
chr̄fànhàu	N:	mess call	63
chr̀bǎng	N:	wing	56
chūngfēng	V/N:	charge, assault	59
chūngfēngchyāng	N:	submachine gun	59

			LESSON
chwēi	V:	blow (a whistle or horn)	60
chwēihàu	VO:	blow the bugle	63
chwūntyan	N:	spring season	52
chyānjèng	VO/N:	to issue a visa, to get a visa/visa	61
chyānwàn	MA:	by all means, without fail, be sure	54
chyānwàn byé	MA:	mustn't, by no means	54
chyē	V:	cut (with knife)	52
chyōutyan	N:	autumn	52
chywán	SV/A:	be whole, complete, entire/all, entirely	57

D

dă dyànhwà	VO:	make a telephone call	58
dàitì	V:	in place of, instead of	63
dānchéng pyàu	N:	one-way ticket	58
dău	V:	fall down	57
dàu(shr̀)	A:	yet, on the contrary	54
-dĕng	M:	class (first class, tóudĕng; second class, èrdĕng, etc.)	60
dĭkàng	V/N:	resist/resistance	55
dŭ	V:	to gamble, to bet	61
dūngtyan	N:	winter	52
dwèiyú	CV:	toward, concerning	62
dyăn hwŏ	VO:	light a fire	54
dyănmíng	VO:	rollcall	59
dyànhwà	N:	telephone, phone call	58
dyànyĭngr	N:	movie	55
dyàu	V:	drop (by accident)	53
dz̀tsúng	MA:	since	53
dzáhwòdyàn	N:	grocery store	57
dzāugāu	IE/SV:	what a mess!/too bad	53
dzăudyănhàu	N:	reveille	63
dzŏuláng	N:	corridor, covered pass	60

F

fā	V:	issue	61
fànchē	N:	dining car	60
fànjwō	N:	dining table	56
fángshŏu	V:	defend	55
fúlwŏ	V/N:	capture (POW)/POW	55

			LESSON
G			
gān	SV:	be dry	57
gēn....jyè	CV.....V:	borrow from.....	60
gūngren	N:	employee, workmen	62
gūngshr̀	N:	official business, official affair	61
gūngshr̀fáng	N:	office	61
gwǎn	V:	manage, in charge of	62
gwóchí	N:	national flag	63
H			
hàu	N:	bugle	63
hàubīng	N:	bugler	63
hàur	N/M:	the number (of house, room, etc.)	58
hòuchēshr̀	N:	waiting room (in bus depot, etc.)	58
hújyāumyàr	N:	ground pepper	54
húlwóbwo	N:	carrot	53
hùjàu	N:	passport	61
hwā chyán	VO:	spend money	60
hwār	N:	flower	52
hwán	V:	return (borrowed money or things)	60
hwéida	V/N:	answer	62
hwǒji	N:	waiter, clerk of a store	60
hwǒpàu	N:	cannon	63
J			
já	V:	fry in deep fat	54
jǎi	SV:	be narrow	56
jàn dwèi	VO:	line up, stand in line	58
jànfú	N:	POW	55
jànshŕ	A/N:	temporarily/temporary	61
jàntái	N:	platform (railroad station)	60
jǎu(chyán)	V(O):	make change (repay the balance)	58
jèndì	N:	positions (military)	51
jěng	SV/A:	be whole/exactly	63
jěngtyān	(MA)N:	a whole day	63
jīběn syùnlyàn	N:	basic training	59
jītwěi	N:	chicken drumsticks	56
jítwánjyūn	N:	army group	55
jìhwa	V/N:	plan/plan to	55
jǐn	SV:	be tight; strict	62
jìn jàn	VO:	enter station	60
jīngshén	N:	spirit	59
jǐnglíng	N:	alarm (bell)	60
jìnglǐ	VO:	salute	63

			LESSON
jřhwēi	V/N:	command	55
jǔ	V:	to boil, cook	54
jùyì	VO:	pay attention to	59
jūngjyàng	N:	Lt. General	55
jùng	V:	plant	52
jwǔnjyàng	N:	brigadier general	55
jyāròu-myànbāu	N:	sandwich	60
jyā yóu	VO:	fill in gasoline or oil	62
jyàshřywán	N:	pilot (of a plane)	62
jyǎnchá	V/N:	inspect/inspection	59
jyǎndān	SV:	be simple	62
jyàngchí	VO:	lower the flag	63
jyàngchíhàu	N:	retreat	63
jyànglwò	V:	land (from the air)	62
jyāu	V:	water, pour over, to sprinkle	52
jyǎuháng	N:	porter (baggage)	58
jyēji	N:	rank	57
jyē wěn	VO:	kiss	58
jyéhwūn	V:	marry	57
jyè	V:	borrow, lend	60
jyègěi	V:	lend to	60
jyǒubēi	N:	wine cup	56
jyúdz	N:	orange	53
jyǔchyāngjìnglǐ	N:	present arm	63
jyǔshǒujìnglǐ	N:	hand salute	63
jyūn	N:	corps	55
jyūndwèi	N:	troops	55
jyūnjì	N:	discipline (military)	59
jyūnrén	N:	soldier, military man	59
jyūnshr̀	N:	military affairs, military	55
jyūnshr̀ mìmì	N:	military secret	55

K

kǒudí	N:	whistle	60
kǒujìng	N:	caliber	63
kūngjūngsyáujye	N:	airline stewardess	62
kwān	SV:	be wide	56
kwānjǎi	N:	the width	56
kwòjāngjàngwǒ	V/N:	exploit (military), exploitation	55

L

lā	V:	pull	60
lāsyitǔng	N:	garbage can	53
láihwéi pyàu	N:	round trip ticket	58
lìjèng	V/N:	attention (military)	59
lǐng	V:	draw, receive, get	61
lǐngshr̀	N:	consul	61

			LESSON
lǐngshrgwǎn	N:	consulate	61
lìngwài	Sp/MA:	another/in addition to, besides	60
lìngwàide	N:	other	60
lúdz	N:	stove	54
lyánlwò	V/N:	keep contact/contact	62
lyánlwò jyūngwān	N:	liaison officer	62
lyóushēngjī	N:	record player	63
lyǔkè	N:	passenger	62
lyǔsyíng	V/N:	travel/traveling	58
lyǔsyíngshè	N:	travel agency	61
M			
máfan	V/N:	trouble	57
mǎlíngshǔ	N:	potato	54
mǐ	N:	grain, uncooked rice	53
myàn	N:	flour, noodles	54
myàntyáur	N:	noodles	54
N			
nàmma	IE:	in that case	53
nùng	V:	do, handle, make	54
nyóuyóu	N:	butter	53
P			
pánsywán	V:	circle	62
pángmén	N:	side door	58
pèngjyan	V:	meet (accidentally)	62
-píng(dz)	M:	a bottle of	53
píngdz	N:	bottle	53
pútáu	N:	grapes	56
pyàu	N:	ticket, slip	58
R			
rénywánswǔnshr̄	N:	casualties	55
róu myàn	VO:	knead dough	54
rùwǔ	VO:	enlist	59
S			
sǎ	V:	spill	57
shài	V:	dry in the sun	52
shānglyang	V:	discuss, talk over, consult	61

			LESSON
shàngjyàng	N:	full general	55
shàngkūng	N:	sky, air, in the sky, in the air, overhead	62
shāusyī	V/N:	at ease (military)	59
shàujyàng	N:	major general	55
shēngchí	VO:	raise the flag	63
shèngsyade	N:	leftover	57
shōu	V:	receive; put away	57
shōushr	V:	fix, repair, clean up, put in order, straighten out	57
shǒusyù	N:	procedure, process	61
shòu	V:	receive (training, punishment, reward, etc.), undergo	59
shòusyùn	VO:	receive training	59
shŕjyānbyǎu	N:	time table	58
shŕwù	N:	food	53
shū	V:	lose (in gambling, bet or any contest)	61
shwěigwǒ	N:	fruits	53
swàn	V:	reckon, calculate, count	58
swànle ba!	IE:	forget it, let the matter drop, call it quits	58
swèi	SV:	be broken (into pieces)	53
swǒ	V/N:	lock	61
syàtyan	N:	summer	52
syāngdz	N:	case, trunk, box	58
syāngjyāu	N:	banana	56
syángsyi	SV:	in detail	62
syāu	V:	peel, sharpen (pencil, etc)	54
syīgwa	N:	watermelon	52
syídēng	VO:	lights out	63
syídēnghàu	N:	taps	63
syǐyījī	N:	washing machine	52
syīnbīng	N:	recruit	59
syīnsyan	SV:	be fresh	53
syíng	V:	execute (a salute)	63
syíngchē-shŕjyānbyǎu	N:	train or bus schedule	58
syínglǐ	VO:	salute	63
syíngli	N:	baggage	58
syínglifáng	N:	baggage room	58
syùnlyàn	V/N:	train/training	59
sz̄lìng	N:	commander	55
sz̄lìngbù	N:	headquarters	55

T

tóusyáng	V/N:	surrender	55
tsàidāndz	N:	menu	60
tsānmóujǎng	N:	chief-of-staff	55
tsāngkù	N:	depot	59
tsàudì	N:	lawn	52

			LESSON
tsúng....chǐ	CV....V:	start from	59
tūngsyìn	VO:	communicate	62
tūngsyìnywán	N:	communications operator	62
tǔngshwài	N:	supreme commander	55
twēi	V:	push	52
twēitsǎujī	N:	lawn mower	52
twěi	N:	thigh and leg	56

W

wàigwó	N:	foreign country	52
wǎngwèi	N:	cupboard	57
wéisyǎn	N/SV:	danger/be dangerous, critical	60
wěijwāng	V/N:	camouflage	63
wěijwāngwǎng	N:	camouflage net	63
wènshr̀chù	N:	information office, stand or desk	58
wòchē	N:	Pullman	60
wúlwùn (or búlwùn, or bùgwǎn)	MA:	no matter (who, what, etc.)	61
wúsyàndyàn	N:	radio	61

Y

yágāu	N:	toothpaste	58
yán	N:	salt	53
yídzfěn	N:	soap powder	57
yǐnchíng	N:	engine	62
yíng	V:	win (in gambling, bet or any contest)	61
yíngchyū	N:	fort, post, camp (permanent)	59
yíngdì	N:	camp (temporary)	63
yíngfáng	N:	barracks	59
yìngjēng	VO:	report for draft	59
yìngmù	VO:	enlist (voluntarily)	59
yóu	N:	oil, sauce	53
yùbèihàu	N:	first call	63
ywánlái	MA/SV:	originally, as a matter of fact/original	57

U.S.GPO:1978-789-088/7893